Copyrights & Licensing

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 27
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Literal Text
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 10
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 10
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 12
Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Translation Words
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 14
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament
Date: 2020-02-20
Version: 0.12
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible
Date: 2020-02-20
Version: 2.1.11
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Copyright © 2019 by unfoldingWord

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/ or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: “The original work by unfoldingWord is available from unfoldingword.org/utn”. You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).
If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.
# Table of Contents

**unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esther</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction to Esther</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esther 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esther 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esther 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esther 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esther 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esther 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esther 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esther 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esther 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esther 10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abstract Nouns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active or Passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Background Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biblical Distance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biblical Money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doublet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Euphemism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First, Second or Third Person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrew Months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hendiadys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to Translate Names</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperbole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Idiom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction of a New Event</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction of New and Old Participants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Merism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metaphor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metonymy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numbers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ordinal Numbers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhetorical Question</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symbolic Action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synecdoche</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Translate Unknowns</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**unfoldingWord® Translation Words**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>administration, administrator, administering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adversary, enemy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahasuerus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appoint, appointed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>banquet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benjamin, Benjamite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call, call out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>column, pillar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>command, commandment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>concubine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>condemn, condemned, condemnation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contempt, contemptible, not worth listening to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crown, crowned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cry, cry out, outcry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decree, decreed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>destroy, destruction, annihilate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>die, dead, deadly, death,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esther</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethiopia, Ethiopian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>evil, wicked, unpleasant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exile, exiled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>face, facial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>family, household</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fast, fasting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>favor, favorable, favoritism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fear, afraid, dread</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feast, feasting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>generation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glory, glorious, glorify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gold, golden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>govern, government, governor, proconsul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hang, hung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>head</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>horse, warhorse, horseback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>house</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jerusalem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jew, Jewish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Judah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>judge, judgment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>king, kingdom, kingship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kingdom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>law, principle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>life, live, living, alive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lord, Lord, master, sir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lots, casting lots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>love, beloved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mede, Medes, Media</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mordecai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mourn, mourner, weeping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nebuchadnezzar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noble, nobleman, royal official</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obey, obedient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oversee, overseer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peace, peaceful, peacemakers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>people, people group,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Persia, Persians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plea, plead, beg, implore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>power, powerful, powerfully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prostrate, worship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>province, provincial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>purple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>queen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reign, rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rest, rested, restless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>royal, royalty, king's, queen's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sackcloth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scepter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scribe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seal, sealed, unsealed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seed, semen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seek, search, look for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>silver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slaughter, slaughtered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>son</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soul, self</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>splendor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stronghold, fortifications, fortress, citadel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sword, swordsmen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>threshold, doorway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throne, enthroned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time, untimely, date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tongue, language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tremble, stagger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trespass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tribute, contribution, fined</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>true, truth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vashti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>virgin, virginity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wine, wineskin, new wine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wise men, advisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wrath, fury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Contributors**

- unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors
- unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors
- unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors
- unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors
- unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors
Introduction to Esther

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of Esther

1. King Ahasuerus sends away his wife, the queen (1:1–22)
2. Ahasuerus chooses Esther as the new queen (2:1–23)
3. Haman plots to destroy the Jews (3:1–15)
4. Mordecai asks Esther to help her people (4:1–17)
5. Esther pleads with the king for the Jews (5:1–7:10)
6. The result of Haman's plot to destroy the Jews (8:1–9:16)
7. The Feast of Purim (9:17–32)
8. Conclusion (10:1–3)

What is the Book of Esther about?

The Book of Esther tells how a young Jewish woman named Esther became the queen of Persia. As queen, she worked to save all the Jews in the Persian Empire from being destroyed.

This book ends by telling why the Jews celebrate the festival of Purim. The name “Purim” comes from the word “pur.” It means “lots” or “dice.” Haman, the enemy of Jews, threw dice to choose when to attack and destroy the Jews. The Jews celebrate Purim to remember how Yahweh rescued his people from being destroyed.

How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators can use the traditional title of this book, which is “The Book of Esther” or just “Esther.” Or they can choose a clearer title, such as “The Book About Esther.”

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

What was the Persian Empire?

King Cyrus the Great conquered and ruled over many kingdoms. This was in the part of the world called Persia, which is now Iran. So people named his kingdom the Persian Empire. When Cyrus conquered Babylonia in 539 B.C., he then controlled the Jews whom the Babylonians had exiled.

Why were there Jews in Babylonia when the Persians conquered it?

In 586 B.C., the Babylonians conquered and took into exile the people of Judah. These Jews and their descendants were still in Babylon when the Persians conquered it.

What was meant by “the laws of the Medes and Persians”?

The phrase “the laws of the Medes and Persians” is found in Esther 1:19 and Daniel 6:12. It referred to laws and decrees that could not be changed or removed once they were issued. In the book of Esther, the king made a decree that the people could attack the Jews. Later he regretted that decision but he was not able to change the decree.

The term “Medes” refers to a people group that had formed its own nation, but the Persians conquered them.
Part 3: Important Translation Issues

What different levels of language are in the Book of Esther?

In the Book of Esther, people talk to each other in many different situations. There is the polite and stately talk in the Persian court and the words of royal decrees. Friends and close relatives also talk to each other. There are even the words that one uses in speaking to oneself. Translators should use all the ways their own language has to express these different situations in a way that their readers will identify and understand.
Esther 1

Esther 1 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

The king's divorce

The king's advisers were afraid that husbands would lose their authority when they heard the queen had refused to come to show her beauty to the king's guests; so the advisers told him to divorce her.
Esther 1:1

In the days of Ahasuerus

“In the time of Ahasuerus” or “When Ahasuerus was ruling as king”

doing this is Ahasuerus who reigned from India as far as Cush, over 127 provinces

This is background information to help the reader identify Ahasuerus. (See: Background Information)

provinces

A province is a large area into which some countries are divided for the purposes of government.

Translation Words - ULT

* Ethiopia
* Ahasuerus
* Ahasuerus
* provinces
* the one who ruled

Translation Words - UST

* Ethiopia in the west
* Ahasuerus
* king named Ahasuerus
* provinces
* ruled a very large empire which had

ULT

1 Now it happened in the days of Ahasuerus (he was Ahasuerus, the one who ruled from India even as far as Ethiopia, 127 provinces);

UST

1 This account happened during the reign of Ahasuerus. This king named Ahasuerus ruled a very large empire which had 127 provinces, extending from India in the east to Ethiopia in the west.
Esther 1:2

sat on his royal throne

Here “royal throne” may refer to his rule over the kingdom. Alternate translation: “ruled the empire” (See: Metonymy)

fortress

This refers to a castle, stronghold or fortified city.

Susa

This was a royal city of Persian kings. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Ahasuerus
- his royal
- throne
- the king
- the citadel

Translation Words - UST

- Ahasuerus
- his empire
- the throne
- King
- the citadel
Esther 1:3

In the third year of his reign

“After he had ruled for 2 years” (See: Numbers)

The army

This likely refers to the leaders of the army. Alternate translation:
“The officers of the army” (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- and Media
- Persia
- and his administrators
- the provinces
- a feast
- of his reign
- before him
- his officials
- the noblemen
- and the governors of

Translation Words - UST

- and Media
- Persia
- and the people who worked in his administration
- provincial
- a feast...the feast
- that Ahasuerus ruled his empire
- came to Susa for
- his officials
- the wealthy landowners
- and the...governors

ULT
3 in the third year of his reign, he made a feast for all his officials and his administrators, the army of Persia and Media, the noblemen, and the governors of the provinces before him.

UST
3 During the third year that Ahasuerus ruled his empire, he hosted a feast for all his officials and the people who worked in his administration. He invited the officers who served in the combined army of Persia and Media, the wealthy landowners, and the provincial governors. All of them came to Susa for the feast.
Esther 1:4

the wealth of the splendor of his kingdom

These words have similar meaning and emphasize how great his kingdom was. Alternate translation: “the great wealth of his kingdom” (See: Doublet)

the honor of the glory of his greatness

These words have similar meaning and emphasize how great he was. Alternate translation: “the splendor of his greatness” (See: Doublet)

180 days

“one hundred and eighty days” (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- the glory of
- his kingdom
- the splendor of

Translation Words - UST

- extremely
- his empire...king
- splendid

ULT

4 when he displayed the wealth of the glory of his kingdom and the splendor of the beauty of his greatness for many days, for 180 days.

UST

4 The festivities lasted about six months, which was a long time for a royal feast. Ahasuerus wanted to demonstrate to his guests that his empire was extremely wealthy and that he was a splendid, wonderful, and majestic king.
Esther 1:5

When these days were completed

“At the end of that feast”

a feast lasting seven days

This was a second feast that was only for the officials in Susa. Alternate translation: “another feast that lasted seven days”

fortress

This refers to a castle, stronghold or fortified city. See how you translated this in Esther 1:1.

Susa

See how you translated the name of this place in Esther 1:2. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- the palace of
- the people
- a feast
- the king
- the king
- the citadel

Translation Words - UST

- s palace
- man
- another feast...This feast
- the king
- the king
- the citadel

ULT
5 And when those days were fulfilled, the king made a feast for all the people who were found in Susa the citadel, from the greatest even to the least, for seven days, in the courtyard of the garden of the palace of the king.

UST
5 At the end of those six months, the king hosted another feast for every man that worked for him in the citadel at Susa, from the most important official even to the least important servant. This feast happened in the courtyard of the king's palace garden, and it lasted seven days.
Esther 1:6

a mosaic pavement
A “mosaic” consists of colored stones arranged in an attractive pattern.

porphyry
This is a kind of red and purple rock that contained pieces of crystal.

Translation Words - ULT
• silver
• and silver
• gold
• and purple
• and pillars of

Translation Words - UST
• silver
• and silver
• gold
• purple and
• on...pillars

ULT
6 Linens cotton and blue were hanging by cords of byssus and purple on rings of silver and pillars of marble; beds of gold and silver were on the pavement of porphyry and alabaster and pearl and precious stone.

UST
6 In the courtyard, blue and white curtains were hanging from purple and linen cords attached to silver rings on marble pillars. The guests reclined on couches made of gold and silver, which were set on a mosaic floor made of expensive stones such as feldspar, alabaster, and pearl.
Esther 1:7

Drinks were served in golden cups

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The guests drank wine from gold cups” (See: Active or Passive)

there was much royal wine that came because of the king’s generosity

“the king was very generous with the royal wine”

generosity

“great willingness to give”

Translation Words - ULT

• of royalty
• the king
• gold
• and the wine

Translation Words - UST

• royal
• the king
• golden
• wine...of...wine, and...all of it

ULT

7 And the serving was in vessels of gold, with vessels differing from other vessels; and the wine of royalty was abundant according to the hand of the king.

UST

7 The attendants served wine in many various kinds of golden cups. There was vast amounts of royal wine, and the king provided all of it.
Esther 1:8

There must be no compulsion

“No one must be forced to drink”

king had given orders to all the officials of his palace to do according to the desire of each man

This statement means that the king told his workers to give all the guests as much wine as they wanted.

Translation Words - ULT

• was according to the law
• the king
• overseer of
• his house

Translation Words - UST

• the rule
• Ahasuerus...the king
• attendants who served the wine
• his household

ULT
8 And the drinking was according to the law, "There is no compulsion;" for thus the king had established for every overseer of his house, to do according to the desire of man by man.

UST
8 Furthermore, Ahasuerus had established the rule for all his household attendants who served the wine that there was to be no restriction on drinking, because the king wanted every guest to be able to drink as much as he wanted.
Esther 1:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Vashti
- Ahasuerus
- in the house of royalty
- a feast of
- the queen
- belonged to the king

Translation Words - UST

- Vashti
- Ahasuerus
- was inside the...palace
- royal
- a feast...This feast
- Queen...the king's wife
- King...lived

ULT

9 Also Vashti the queen made a feast of women in the house of royalty that belonged to the king Ahasuerus.

UST

9 During this time, Queen Vashti, the king's wife, also hosted a feast for the wives of the men who attended. This feast was inside the royal palace where King Ahasuerus lived.
Esther 1:10

On the seventh day

“After 6 days” (See: Numbers)

the king’s heart was feeling happy because of the wine

Here “heart” refers to the king, and “feeling happy” is an idiom that means he was drunk. Alternate translation: “the king was drunk with wine” (See: Synecdoche and Idiom)

Mehuman, Biztha, Harbona, Bigtha, Abagtha, Zethar, and Karkas

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

the seven officials who served before him

This is background information to explain who these men were. (See: Background Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- the heart of
- when...was pleased
- Ahasuerus
- the face of
- the king
- by the wine

Translation Words - UST

- mood
- after...was in a good
- Ahasuerus
- him
- King
- King
- from drinking wine
Esther 1:11

her features were stunning

“she was very beautiful”

Translation Words - ULT

- pleasing of
- Vashti
- the people
- royalty
- the queen
- before
- the king
- and the officials
- in a crown of

Translation Words - UST

- a...attractive woman
- Vashti
- to his guests
- royal
- Queen
- before
- him
- especially the officials
- wearing a...crown

ULT

11 to bring Vashti the queen before the king in a crown of royalty in order to show the people and the officials her beauty; for she was pleasing of appearance.

UST

11 He told them to bring Queen Vashti before him, wearing a royal crown, to display her beauty to his guests, especially the officials. (He wanted to make them jealous, because she was a sexually attractive woman.)
Esther 1:12

at the word of the king that had been brought to her by the officials

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “when the king's officials told her about his command” (See: [Active or Passive](#)).

at the word of the king that had been brought to her by the officials

his rage burned within him

The intensity of the king's anger is spoken of as if it was a fire that burned inside him. Alternate translation: “his rage was as intense as a fire inside him” (See: [Metaphor](#)).

Translation Words - ULT

- Then...became...angry
- and his rage
- Vashti
- the queen
- the king
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- Then...was...furious
- and...rage
- Vashti...she
- Queen
- the king
- the king

ULT

12 But the queen Vashti refused to come at the word of the king that was by the hand of the eunuchs. Then the king became very angry, and his rage burned within him.

UST

12 But when those servants told Queen Vashti what the king wanted, she refused to come because she did not want a group of drunken men staring at her lustfully. Then the king was very furious, and he seethed with rage.
Esther 1:13

who understood the times
“who understood the things that happened in their lives”

for this was the king’s procedure toward all who were expert in law and judgment

This background information explains why the king called these men. (See: Background Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• and judgment
• to the wise men
• the times
• law
• before
• the king
• the king (2)
• who were knowers of
• those who were knowers of

Translation Words - UST

• and...good decisions
• his advisors
• the culture
• the law
• with
• the king
• the king (2)
• who understood
• who knew...could make
Esther 1:14

Karshena, Shethar, Admatha, Tarshish, Meres, Marsena, and Memukan

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- and Media
- Persia
- the face of
- the king
- officials of
- in the kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- and Media
- Persia
- personally
- the king
- These...officials were from various places in...officials
- in the empire

ULT
14 and the ones near to him were Karshena, Shethar, Admatha, Tarshish, Meres, Marsena, Memukan, seven officials of Persia and Media who were seers of the face of the king, the ones who sat first in the kingdom:

UST
14 (Now the names of his closest advisors were Karshena, Shethar, Admatha, Tarshish, Meres, Marsena, and Memukan. These seven officials were from various places in Persia and Media. They advised the king personally, and they were the most powerful officials in the empire.)
Esther 1:15

In compliance with the law...by the officials?

It may be helpful to state who asked this question. Alternate translation: The king said to them, “In compliance with the law...by the officials?” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

In compliance with the law

“In observance of the law” or “In obedience to the law”

Translation Words - ULT

- the command of
- Vashti
- Ahasuerus
- by the hand of
- she did...perform
- According to law
- with the queen
- King

Translation Words - UST

- told...command...to do
- Vashti
- I
- to...her
- did...do
- According to the law
- Queen
- I

ULT

15 “According to law, what is to be done with the queen Vashti on account of that she did not perform the command of King Ahasuerus by the hand of the eunuchs?”

UST

15 The king asked them, “Queen Vashti did not do what I told my castrated servants to command her to do. According to the law, what should be done about this situation?”
Esther 1:16

Memukan

Translate his name as in Esther 1:14. (See: How to Translate Names)

all the officials and all the people...all the provinces

These are exaggerations to emphasize the damage that the queen's refusal caused. (See: Hyperbole)

provinces

a large area into which some countries are divided for the purposes of government. See how you translated this in Esther 1:1.

Translation Words - ULT

• Vashti
• Ahasuerus
• the people
• the provinces of
• the queen
• before
• the king
• the king (2)
• the king
• and the officials
• the officials
• has...done wrong

Translation Words - UST

• Vashti
• Ahasuerus
• man
• empire of
• Queen
• so that...could hear
• the king
• the king (2)
• King
• both...and the officials
• official
• has commited a crime
Esther 1:17

all women

This is an exaggeration to emphasize the damage that the queen's refusal caused. (See: Hyperbole)

Translation Words - ULT

- Vashti
- Ahasuerus
- the queen
- the queen
- before him
- The king

Translation Words - UST

- Vashti
- Ahasuerus
- the queen
- Queen
- before him
- King

ULT

17 For the matter of the queen will go out to all the women, in order to make their husbands despised in their eyes when they say, 'The king Ahasuerus said to bring Vashti the queen before him, but she did not come.'

UST

17 This is what will happen. The news about what the queen has done will spread to all the women. Then they will despise their husbands and say, "King Ahasuerus commanded his servants to bring Queen Vashti before him, and she did not come!"
Esther 1:18

There will be much contempt and anger

“They will be angry with their husbands and treat them with contempt”

Translation Words - ULT

• and wrath
• and Media
• Persia
• the queen
• the king
• contempt
• the officials of

Translation Words - UST

• and we will be furious
• and Media
• Persia
• the queen
• the king
• Our wives will treat us with contempt and refuse to obey us
• s officials

ULT
18 Now this day, the noblewomen of Persia and Media who have heard the matter of the queen will speak to all the officials of the king; and there will be contempt and wrath enough!

UST
18 Even this very day, that is what the wives of the officials who govern Persia and Media who have heard what the queen has done will say to all the king’s officials. Our wives will treat us with contempt and refuse to obey us, and we will be furious as much as we can bear.
Esther 1:19

Connecting Statement:

Meremoth continues to answer the king.

If it pleases the king...from him...before him...Let the king

Meremoth speaks to the king in third person as a form of respect. Alternate translation: “If it pleases you...from you...before you... Please” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

which cannot be repealed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “which no one can change” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• it seems good
• and Media
• Vashti
• Ahasuerus
• Persia
• royalty
• in the laws of
• from before him
• before
• the king
• the king (2)
• the king
• a decree of

Translation Words - UST

• this advice is pleasant
• and Media
• Vashti
• Ahasuerus
• Persia
• royal
• in the law books of...laws
• you...you
• before
• you, O king
• King (2)
• the king
• a decree...This decree...this...decree...it
Then the decree of the king will be heard which he will make for all his kingdom, though it is great; then all the women will give honor to their husbands, from the greatest to the least.

Even though your empire is very large, when everyone in your empire hears the decree that you have commanded, then all the women will respect and obey their husbands. This will be true for both the most important man and the least important man in the empire, and everyone in between.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- honor
- the king
- his kingdom
- the decree of

**Translation Words - UST**

- respect and obey...This will be true
- you
- your empire...your empire...the empire
- the decree
Esther 1:21

Memukan

Translate his name as in Esther 1:14. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- seemed good
- the king
- the king (2)
- and the officials

Translation Words - UST

- appealing
- the king
- King Ahasuerus (2)
- Both...and the other officials

ULT
21 The word seemed good in the eyes of the king and the officials; and the king acted according to the word of Memukan.

UST
21 Both the king and the other officials found this advice appealing, so King Ahasuerus wrote a law proclaiming what Memukan had suggested.
Esther 1:22

province
A province is a large area into which some countries are divided for the purposes of government. See how you translated this in Esther 1:1.

every man should be master of his own household
“all men should have complete authority over their wives and their children”

This decree was given
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “They wrote this decree” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT
• ruling
• people
• people by
• his people
• the provinces of
• province
• province by
• according to its own tongue
• according to the tongue of
• the king
• in his house

Translation Words - UST
• should rule
• each...people group
• and every
• his own people group
• the provinces in...empire
• each...province
• and every
• the dialects of
• the language of
• King Ahasuerus...his
• in his own house

ULT
22 And he sent letters to all the provinces of the king, to province by province according to its own writing, and to people by people according to its own tongue; that every man should be ruling in his house and speaking according to the tongue of his people.

UST
22 This law said that every man should rule in his own house and should speak the language of his own people group. Then King Ahasuerus sent letters stating this law to all the provinces in his empire. Scribes translated these letters into the languages of each and every province and into the dialects of each and every people group.
Esther 2

Esther 2 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Esther becomes queen

Esther was humble and took the advice of the royal officials about how to dress for her time with the king. The king chose Esther to be the new queen.

Mordecai warns the king against a plot

Esther’s cousin, Mordecai, discovered that two men planned to kill the king. He told Esther, who then told the king. She also gave Mordecai credit for telling her.
Esther 2:1

After these things

This introduces a new event that happened a while later. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

the anger of King Ahasuerus subsided

“the king became less angry”

called the decree

This is refers to the decree in Esther 1:19-20.

Translation Words - ULT

- Vashti
- Ahasuerus
- the king
- the rage of

Translation Words - UST

- Vashti
- Ahasuerus
- King
- so angry
Esther 2:2

Let a search be made

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Tell your servants to search” (See: Active or Passive)

on the king’s behalf

The men speak to the king in the third person as a sign of respect. Alternate translation: “on your behalf” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT

• and pleasing of
• the king
• for the king
• Let them seek
• are virgins
• who served him

Translation Words - UST

• are...attractive
• his...him
• You
• could send some men to find
• virgins who
• personal

ULT

2 Then the young men of the king who served him said, “Let them seek for the king young women who are virgins and pleasing of appearance.

UST

2 So his personal servants said to him, ”You could send some men to find young virgins who are sexually attractive.
Esther 2:3

Connecting Statement:
The young servants continue to speak to the king.

Let the king...the king's official

The servants spoke to the king in third person as a sign of respect. Alternate translation: “You should...your official” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

provinces

A province is a large area into which some countries are divided for the purposes of government. See how you translated this in Esther 1:1.

harem

where the wives of a man with many wives live

the fortress

This refers to a castle, stronghold or fortified city. See how you translated this in Esther 1:2.

Susa

See how you translated the name of this place in Esther 1:2. (See: How to Translate Names)

Let them be put under the care of Hegai, the king's official, who is in charge of the women

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Let Hegai, the king's official, who is in charge of the women, take care of them” (See: Active or Passive)

Hegai

This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)

their cosmetics

A “cosmetic” is a substance such as a cream, lotion, or powder that women usually put on their face or body to improve their appearance.

Translation Words - ULT

- And let...appoint
- and pleasing of
- the hand of
- administrators
- the provinces of
- the king
- the king
• who is overseer of
• the citadel
• his kingdom
• is a virgin
• the house of

Translation Words - UST

• Also...could appoint
• attractive
• the custody of
• officers
• province of
• you
• servant
• who is in charge of
• the citadel
• your empire
• virgin
• s harem
Esther 2:4

pleases the king

The servants spoke to the king in third person as a sign of respect. Alternate translation: “pleases you” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT

• Vashti
• the king

Translation Words - UST

• Vashti
• you

usheringWord® Translation Notes

Introduction to Esther :: Esther 2:4

ULT

4 Then let the young woman who is pleasing in the eyes of the king become queen instead of Vashti.” And the word was pleasing in the eyes of the king, so he did thus.

UST

4 Then you could choose whichever young virgin you find attractive and make her queen instead of Vashti.” The king found their suggestion appealing, so he did that.
Esther 2:5

There was a certain Jew

This introduces Mordecai as a new character in the story. (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

Susa

Translate the name of this city as in Esther 1:2. (See: How to Translate Names)

son of Jair son of Shimei son of Kish

“Jair,” “Shimei,” and “Kish” are men from whom “Mordecai” is the male descendant. (See: How to Translate Names)

a Benjamite

“of the tribe of Benjamin”

Translation Words - ULT

• a Jew
• the son of
• the son of
• the son of (2)
• a Benjamite
• Mordecai
• the citadel

Translation Words - UST

• Jewish
• was the son of
• was the son of
• was the son of (2)
• from the tribe of Benjamin
• Mordecai...Mordecai
• the citadel

ULT

5 A man, a Jew, was in Susa the citadel; and his name was Mordecai the son of Jair, the son of Shimei, the son of Kish (a man, a Benjamite).

UST

5 At that time, a Jewish man named Mordecai was living in the citadel at Susa. Mordecai was the son of Jair, who was the son of Shimei, who was the son of Kish. Kish was a man from the tribe of Benjamin.
Esther 2:6

He had been taken away...king of Babylonia carried away

This background information explains how Mordecai came to live in Susa. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylonia carried him and other exiles away along with Jehoiachin, king of Judah” (See: Background Information and Active or Passive)

He had been taken away from Jerusalem

The Hebrew text leaves unclear who is being spoken of here. It is perhaps Kish, who seems to have been the great-grandfather of Mordecai. If it was Mordecai himself, then he would be extremely old at the time of the events concerning Esther. Many modern versions leave this matter unclear. A few versions, including the UST, choose to assume that it was Mordecai who had been taken away from Jerusalem.

Jehoiachin, king of Judah

(See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Babylon
- Judah
- from Jerusalem
- Nebuchadnezzar
- the captives
- the king of
- the king of
- had been exiled
- had been exiled
- had exiled

Translation Words - UST

- Babylon
- Judah
- from Jerusalem...from Jerusalem...from Jerusalem
- Nebuchadnezzar...Nebuchadnezzar...he
- some other captives...the captives
- King...of
- King...of
- Many years earlier...had taken...away...and brought...to Babylon
- took away
- took...and brought...to Babylon
And he was fostering Hadassah (she is Esther), the daughter of his uncle, because there was not for her a father or a mother. Now the young woman was beautiful of form and pleasing of appearance. And at the death of her father and her mother, Mordecai had taken her for him as a daughter.

Now Mordecai was taking care of his uncle's daughter, because both her father and mother had died. Her Hebrew name was Hadassah, and her Persian name was Esther. After her father and her mother had died, Mordecai had adopted her as his own daughter. Esther grew up into a young woman, and she was very sexually attractive with a beautiful body.
Esther 2:8

When the king’s order and decree were proclaimed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “After the king commanded that they search for some beautiful women” (See: Active or Passive)

proclaimed
“announced”

many young women were brought

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they brought many young women” (See: Active or Passive)

They were put under Hegai’s care

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Hegai began to take care of them” (See: Active or Passive)

Esther also was taken into the king’s palace and put under the care of Hegai, the overseer of the women

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Hegai, the overseer of the women, also began to take care of Esther when they brought her to the king’s palace” (See: Active or Passive)

palace

See how you translated this in Esther 1:5.

Translation Words - ULT

- Esther
- the hand of
- the hand of
- the house of
- and his law
- the king
- the king
- who was overseer of
- the citadel
- the decree of

Translation Words - UST

- Esther...her
- the custody of
- had custody of
- s palace
- and...s law
- the king...the king
• the king
• was in charge of
• the citadel
• s decree
Esther 2:9

The young girl pleased him, and she found favor with him

These two phrases mean the same thing and emphasize how much she pleased him. Alternate translation: “The young girl greatly pleased him” (See: Doublet)

The young girl

“Esther”

Translation Words - ULT

• And...was pleasing
• to the best of
• from the house of
• before him
• the king
• her young women
• the house of

Translation Words - UST

• Hegai...attractive
• to the best rooms in
• from...s house
• from him
• the king
• her...maids
• harem where...lived

ULT

9 And the young woman was pleasing in his eyes, and she lifted friendship before him. So he quickly gave her ointments, gave her portions of food, and gave her seven young women chosen from the house of the king. And he transferred her and her young women to the best of the house of women.

UST

9 Hegai found Esther attractive, and she obtained kindness from him. So he quickly arranged for Esther to receive her beauty treatments and gave her fine food to eat. He also chose seven maids from the king's house and assigned them to take care of Esther. And Hegai moved Esther and her seven maids to the best rooms in the harem where the women with whom Ahasuerus had not yet had sexual intercourse lived.
Esther 2:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Mordecai
- Esther
- her people

Translation Words - UST

- Mordecai
- Esther...she
- she was a Jew

ULT
10 Esther had not declared her people or her ancestry, for Mordecai had laid a charge upon her that she should not tell it.

UST
10 Esther did not tell anyone that she was a Jew, neither did she tell anyone who her relatives were. She did that because Mordecai had instructed her that she should not tell those things to anyone.
Esther 2:11

about Esther's welfare

“how Esther was doing” or “about Esther’s well-being”

Translation Words - ULT

- Mordecai
- Esther
- in front of
- the welfare of
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- Mordecai
- Esther
- in front of
- how...was doing
- harem for...the harem

ULT

11 And always day by day Mordecai was walking about in front of the courtyard of the house of women, in order to know the welfare of Esther and what was being done with her.

UST

11 Each and every day, Mordecai walked around in front of the courtyard of the harem for virgins. He asked people who were going in and out of the harem how Esther was doing and what was happening with her.
Esther 2:12

General Information:

Verses 12-14 are background information about the customs for the women who became the king’s wives. (See: Background Information)

**complying with the regulations for the women**

“acting in accordance with the requirements for the women”

**beauty treatments**

Things done to make the girls look more beautiful and smell good.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Ahasuerus
- according to the law of
- the king

**Translation Words - UST**

- Ahasuerus...he
- there was a law in Persia which said that...The law stated that
- the king...King

**ULT**

12 Now when the turn came for young woman by young woman to go to the king Ahasuerus, it was after her 12 months, according to the law of women. For thus the days of their beautification would be fulfilled: six months by oil of myrrh, then six months by perfumes and by the ointments of women.

**UST**

12 Now there was a law in Persia which said that someone must put ointments on the body of a woman to make her more beautiful for twelve months before the king had sexual intercourse with her. The law stated that someone must put olive oil mixed with myrrh on the body of a woman for six months, and for the next six months someone put perfumes and feminine ointments on her body. So for each and every young woman, this is how she would spend the time preparing for when her turn came to go to King Ahasuerus so he could have sexual intercourse with her.
Esther 2:13

whatever she desired was given to her

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “she could take whatever she desired” (See: Active or Passive)

palace

See how you translated this in Esther 1:5.

Translation Words - ULT

• the king
• the king
• the house of

Translation Words - UST

• the king
• the king
• s residence

ULT

13 Then at this, the young woman would go to the king. Anything that she said would be given to her, to go with her from the house of women to the house of the king.

UST

13 Then, when that woman went to the king, she could wear whatever clothes and jewelry she wanted to take with her from the harem for virgins to the king’s residence.
Esther 2:14

This continues the background information that began in Esther 2:12 about the customs for the women who became the king's wives. (See: Background Information)

In the evening she would go, and in the morning she would return to the second house of women, into the hand of Shaashgaz (the eunuch of the king who was overseer of the concubines). She would not go to the king again, unless the king had delighted in her and she was called by name.

In the evening, the king's servants would take her to the king's private room. The next morning, they would take her to another women's harem under the custody of Shaashgaz (the king's castrated servant who was in charge of the women with whom Ahasuerus had had sexual intercourse). She would live there for the rest of her life, and she would never again go back to the king unless she had pleased the king very much and the king called for her by name.

Translation Words - ULT

- by name
- the hand of
- the concubines
- had delighted
- the king
- the king
- the king (2)
- who was overseer of
- the...house of

Translation Words - UST

- by name
- the custody of
- the women with whom Ahasuerus had had sexual intercourse
- had pleased...very much
- the king
- the king
- the king
- the king...the king (2)
- who was in charge of
- s harem...would live there for the rest of her life
Esther 2:15

Now when the time came

This introduces a new part of the story. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

daughter of Abihail, the uncle of Mordecai, who had taken her as his own daughter

This background information reminds the reader of Esther’s relationship to Mordecai. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

Abihail

Esther’s father and Mordecai’s uncle (See: How to Translate Names)

she did not ask for anything but what

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “she asked only for what”

Hegai

See how you translated this man’s name in Esther 2:3. (See: How to Translate Names)

received the favor of all

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “pleased all” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- favor
- Mordecai
- Esther...her
- Esther
- the king
- she did...ask for
- who was overseer of

Translation Words - UST

- favor
- Mordecai
- Esther
- Esther
- the king
- she did...ask
- was in charge of
So Esther was taken to the king Ahasuerus, to the house of his royalty, in the tenth month (which is the month of Tebeth), in the seventh year of his reign.

The king's servants took Esther to King Ahasuerus in his royal residence during the tenth month (Tebeth is the name of that month) of the seventh year after he became king of Persia.
Esther 2:17

The king loved

This is the romantic use of the word “love.”

received acceptance and favor before him

These idioms mean the same thing and emphasize how much the Esther pleased the king. Alternate translation: “greatly pleased him” (See: Idiom and Doublet)

set the royal crown on her head

The king did this to show that he was making her his queen. (See: Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT

- favor
- And...loved
- both...and friendship
- So he set
- Vashti
- Esther
- royalty
- and he made her queen
- before him
- the king
- the virgins
- a crown of

Translation Words - UST

- favor
- loved
- and kindness
- So...put
- Vashti
- Esther
- royal
- and made her the queen
- from the king
- The king...King Ahasuerus
- the other virgins
- a...crown

ULT
17 And the king loved Esther more than all the women and she lifted both favor and friendship before him more than all the virgins. So he set a crown of royalty on her head, and he made her queen instead of Vashti.

UST
17 The king loved Esther more than any of the other women, and she obtained favor and kindness from the king more than any of the other virgins. So King Ahasuerus put a royal crown on her head and made her the queen instead of Vashti.
**Esther 2:18**

“Esther’s feast,”

It may be helpful to state that this is the name of the feast. Alternate translation: “he called it, ‘Esther’s feast,’” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

he granted relief from taxation to the provinces

“he collected fewer taxes from the provinces than he had been collecting”

provinces

A province is a large area into which some countries are divided for the purposes of government. See how you translated this in Esther 1:1.

royal generosity

“generosity that only a king can give”

Translation Words - ULT

- Esther
- according to the hand of
- for the provinces
- a...feast
- the feast of
- the king
- his officials
- and his servants

Translation Words - UST

- her...the queen...Esther
- personally...from...expense
- for all the provinces of his empire
- a...feast
- s Feast
- the king
- his own
- his officials
- and the people who worked in his administration

ULT

18 Then the king made a great feast for all his officials and his servants, the feast of Esther. And he made a holiday for the provinces, and he gave gifts according to the hand of the king.

UST

18 Then, to celebrate her becoming the queen, the king hosted “Esther’s Feast,” a great feast for all his officials and the people who worked in his administration. He proclaimed a temporary reprieve from taxes for all the provinces of his empire, and he personally gave gifts from his own expense.
Esther 2:19

when the virgins had been gathered together a second time

It is unclear when this second gathering happened, and why. Therefore some versions have altered the text somewhat. It is probably best to translate it as it is written.

a second time

“one more time” or “an additional time” (See: Numbers)

Mordecai was sitting at the king’s gate

Possible meanings are 1) Mordecai sat there so he could hear how Esther was doing from the many people who passed through the gate or 2) “sitting at the king’s gate” is an idiom that means Mordecai was given a position of authority by the king.

the king’s gate

“the gate to the king’s palace”

Translation Words - ULT

• Mordecai...then
  • at the gate of
  • the king
  • virgins

Translation Words - UST

• Mordecai
  • at the gate to
  • the king’s residence
  • virgins
Esther 2:20

as Mordecai had instructed her

Mordecai told her not to tell anyone about her family.

Translation Words - ULT

• the charge...had laid
• the command of
• Mordecai
• Mordecai
• Esther
• Esther
• her people

Translation Words - UST

• had instructed
• s commands
• Mordecai
• Mordecai
• Esther
• she
• she was a Jew

ULT

20 Esther had not yet declared her ancestry (that is, her people), according to the charge that Mordecai had laid upon her. And Esther continued to do the command of Mordecai, according to how she was with him in her fostering.

UST

20 Esther still had not yet told anyone who her relatives were or that she was a Jew, just as Mordecai had instructed her. In fact, she continued to obey Mordecai’s commands, just as she had done when she was growing up.
Esther 2:21

In those days

This introduces a new event in the story. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

Bigthana and Teresh

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- when Mordecai
- Ahasuerus
- a hand
- at the gate of
- the doorway
- the king
- the king
- to the king
- and they sought
- who were guardians of

Translation Words - UST

- when Mordecai...he
- Ahasuerus...him
- could
- at...s gate
- the doorway to the king's private rooms
- the king
- the king
- King
- talking...and were planning
- of...guarded

ULT

21 In those days, when Mordecai was sitting at the gate of the king, Bigthana and Teresh (two eunuchs of the king who were guardians of the doorway) became angry; and they sought to stretch out a hand to the king Ahasuerus.

UST

21 During that time, when Mordecai was doing his work at the king's gate, he heard two men talking. Their names were Bigthana and Teresh, and they were two of the king's castrated servants who guarded the doorway to the king's private rooms. They were angry with King Ahasuerus and were planning how they could assassinate him.
Esther 2:22

When the matter was revealed to Mordecai

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “When Mordecai learned about what they were planning” (See: Active or Passive)

in the name of Mordecai

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “on behalf of Mordecai” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• in the name of
• to Mordecai
• Mordecai
• to Esther
• Esther
• the queen
• to the king
• But...was made known

Translation Words - UST

• explaining that...came from
• Mordecai
• Mordecai
• Esther
• she
• Queen
• the king
• When...learned about
Esther 2:23

The report was investigated and confirmed, and both the men were hanged

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The king investigated and confirmed the report, and ordered his servants to hang both men” (See: Active or Passive)

a gallows

This was a structure used for killing people by tying one end of a rope around the top of the structure and the other end of the rope around their necks and hanging them from it. Alternate translation: “a frame for hanging people” (See: Translate Unknowns)

This account was written

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “They recorded this account” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• before
• the king
• and...were hung
• Then...was sought out

Translation Words - UST

• watched
• the king
• So the king ordered his servants to kill...and display
• Then the king investigated
Esther 3

Esther 3 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Haman plots against the Jews

Mordecai considered prostrating himself before Haman. This would be considered to be worship. It was wrong to worship someone other than Yahweh. Because of this, he refused to do it on religious grounds. This made Haman angry so he decided to kill all the Jews in the Persian Empire.
Esther 3:1

After these things

This introduces a new event in the story. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

Haman son of Hammedatha the Agagite

This is the name and description of Haman, one of the king's officials. (See: How to Translate Names)

placed his seat of authority above all the officials who were with him

Here "seat of authority" represents his position or status in the government. Alternate translation: “promoted him above the other officials” or “gave him more authority than all the other officials” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• the son of
  • Ahasuerus
  • the king
  • the officials

Translation Words - UST

• the son of
  • Xerxes
  • King
  • officials...the king

ULT

1 After these things, the king Ahasuerus made Haman, the son of Hammedatha the Agagite, great. He lifted him up and placed his seat of authority from over all the officials who were with him.

UST

1 Some time later, King Xerxes promoted Haman, the son of Hammedatha, who was a descendant of King Agag. Haman became more important than all his other officials. Only the king was more important.
Esther 3:2

kneel...prostrated

These acts represent submission to the authority of Haman. (See: Symbolic Action)

prostrated themselves to Haman

“humbled themselves and lay flat on the ground before Haman”

Translation Words - ULT

- had commanded
- and prostrating themselves
- would he prostrate himself
- But Mordecai
- at the gate of
- the king
- the king
- the king
- the servants of
- were bowing down
- would...bow down

Translation Words - UST

- commanded
- had to bow down...to honor
- to bow down to Haman
- But Mordecai
- other
- the...officials
- other
- the king
- the...officials
- had to bow down...to honor
- to bow down to Haman

ULT
2 Then all the servants of the king who were at the gate of the king were bowing down and prostrating themselves to Haman, for thus the king had commanded concerning him. But Mordecai would neither bow down nor would he prostrate himself.

UST
2 Then the king commanded that all the other officials had to bow down in front of Haman to honor him when he walked by. But Mordecai refused to bow down to Haman.
Esther 3:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- are...trespassing
- the command of
- to Mordecai
- at the gate of
- the king
- the king
- the servants of

Translation Words - UST

- disobey
- commanded
- Mordecai
- other
- The...officials saw that
- other
- the king
- The...officials saw that

ULT
3 Then the servants of the king who were at the gate of the king said to Mordecai, "Why are you trespassing the command of the king?"

UST
3 The other officials saw that, and they asked Mordecai, "Why do you disobey what the king commanded?"
Esther 3:4

to see if the matter about Mordecai would remain like that

“to find out what Haman would do about Mordecai’s actions”

Translation Words - ULT

• was a Jew
• Mordecai

Translation Words - UST

• a Jew, and that Jews would bow down only to God
• it

ULT

4 Now it happened that, when they spoke to him day after day, he did not listen to them. So they told Haman to see if the words of Mordecai would stand, for he had told them that he was a Jew. [1]

UST

4 Mordecai told them that he was a Jew, and that Jews would bow down only to God. Day after day the other officials spoke to Mordecai about that, but he still refused to obey. So they told Haman about it, to see if Haman would tolerate it.
Esther 3:5

did not kneel and bow down

Mordecai showed disrespect for Haman's status in the government by not doing these actions. (See: Symbolic Action)

Haman was filled with rage

Here Haman's rage is spoken of as something that could fill him up. Alternate translation: “Haman became very angry” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• nor prostrate himself
• Mordecai
• rage
• bow down

Translation Words - UST

• bow down
• Mordecai
• extremely angry
• bow down

ULT
5 Then Haman saw that Mordecai would neither bow down nor prostrate himself to him. And Haman was filled with rage.

UST
5 When Haman saw that Mordecai would not bow down to him, he became extremely angry.
Esther 3:6

He had contempt for the idea of killing only Mordecai

“He rejected the idea of killing just Mordecai.” This can also be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “He decided to kill more than just Mordecai”

exterminate all the Jews

“get rid of all the Jews” or “kill all the Jews”

Translation Words - ULT

- the Jews
- against Mordecai
- Mordecai
- Ahasuerus
- a hand
- the people of
- people...the...of
- to annihilate
- So...sought
- the...of...kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- Jews
- Mordecai
- Mordecai was
- Mordecai
- Xerxes
- to get rid of
- a Jew
- people, people group,
- to kill
- decided
- the area that...ruled

ULT

6 And it was despised in his eyes to stretch out a hand against Mordecai alone, for they had told him the people of Mordecai. So Haman sought to annihilate all the Jews, the people of Mordecai, who were in all the kingdom of Ahasuerus.

UST

6 After he found out that Mordecai was a Jew, he decided that it would not be enough to get rid of only Mordecai. He decided to kill all the Jews in all the area that Xerxes ruled.
Esther 3:7

In the first month
“In month one” (See: Ordinal Numbers)

which is the month of Nisan
“Nisan” is the name of the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of March and the first part of April on Western calendars. (See: Hebrew Months and How to Translate Names)

in the twelfth year of King Ahasuerus
“in year number 12 of King Ahasuerus” or “when King Ahasuerus had reigned for about twelve years” (See: Ordinal Numbers)

the Pur—that is the lot—was thrown
“they cast the Pur—that is the lot—” (See: How to Translate Names)

the twelfth month
“month twelve” (See: Ordinal Numbers)

the month of Adar
“Adar” is the name of the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on Western calendars. (See: Hebrew Months and How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• Ahasuerus
• the lot
• before
• of the king

Translation Words - UST

• Xerxes
• lots...that was selected
• told his advisors...advisors
• was ruling
Esther 3:8

a certain people
“a group of people” This refers to the Jews as an ethnic group.

scattered and distributed
“who live in many different places”

provinces
A province is a large area into which some countries are divided for the purposes of government. See how you translated this in Esther 1:1.

the king's...the king
Haman speaks to the king in the third person as a sign of respect.
Alternate translation: “your...you” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

it is not suitable for the king to let them stay
“the king should not let them remain.” This can also be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “the king should remove them”

Translation Words - ULT

• Ahasuerus
• people
• the peoples
• people
• do...obey
• the provinces of
• And their laws
• the laws of
• to the king
• the king
• your kingdom

ULT
8 Then Haman said to the king Ahasuerus, “He has one people scattered and dispersed among the peoples in all the provinces of your kingdom. And their laws are different from every people, and the laws of the king they do not obey. And there is no profit to the king to leave them untouched.

Translation Words - UST

• to the king...to him...Your majesty
• a...group of people
• in many areas of
• from ours
• to obey
• in many areas of
• whose customs
• laws
• to the king...to him, “ Your majesty
• your
• your empire
Esther 3:9

I will weigh out...into the hands of those

Here “hands” stands for the men. To “weigh out” is an idiom that means to pay them. Alternate translation: “I will pay...to the men” (See: Synecdoche and Idiom)

ten thousand talents of silver

“330 metric tons of silver” (See: Biblical Money and Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- it is good
- the hands of
- silver
- to destroy them
- the king
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- pleases
- your
- silver
- that they should all be killed. If you do that
- you
- you...your

ULT

9 If it is good to the king, let it be written to destroy them, and I will weigh out 10,000 talents of silver into the hands of the doers of the work, to bring into the treasuries of the king."

UST

9 If it pleases you, command that they should all be killed. If you do that, I will give 375 tons of silver to your administrators so that you can use it for your government.”
Then the king removed his signet ring from on his hand, and he gave it to Haman, the son of Hammedatha the Agagite, the adversary of the Jews.

The king liked what Haman said, so, and to confirm what he decided, he gave the ring that had his official seal on it to Haman, who now hated the Jews.
Esther 3:11

I will see that the money is given back to you

The meaning of this phrase is not clear. Possible meanings are 1) “I will return the money to you” or 2) “Take the money and give it to the men just as you have said.” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- as is good
- The silver
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- what you want to
- money
- The king
Esther 3:12

the king's scribes were summoned...a decree containing all that Haman had commanded was written

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the king summoned his scribes...they wrote a decree containing all that Haman had commanded” (See: Active or Passive)

thirteenth day of the first month

This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The thirteenth day is near the beginning of April on Western calendars. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

king's provincial governors

“governors of the provinces.” Translate “province” as in Esther 1:1.

It was written in the name of King Ahasuerus and was sealed with his ring

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “They wrote the decree in the name of King Ahasuerus and Haman sealed it with the king's signet ring” (See: Active or Passive)

in the name of

Here “name” represents the authority of the king. Alternate translation: “in the authority of” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- the scribes of
- commanded
- In the name of
- Ahasuerus
- people
- by people
- and people
- by people
- province
- by province
- province
- by province
- according to its tongue
- and it was sealed
- the king
- the king
- the king
- the king
- the officials of

ULT

12 And the scribes of the king were called in the first month, on the thirteenth day of it, and it was written according to all that Haman commanded: to the satraps of the king; and to the governors who were over province by province; and to the officials of people by people; province by province according to its writing, and people by people according to its tongue. In the name of the king Ahasuerus it was written, and it was sealed with the signet ring of the king.

UST

12 On April 17th Haman summoned the king's secretaries, and he dictated a letter to them that they translated and wrote to all the governors and administrators and other officials in all the provinces. They wrote copies of the letter in every language and every kind of writing that was used in the empire. They wrote that all the Jews, including young people and old people, women and children, had to be killed on one day. That day was March 7th of the following year. They also wrote that those who killed the Jews could take everything that belonged to the Jews. They signed the king's name at the end of the letters. Then they sealed the letters with wax, and stamped the wax by using the king's ring.
• the governors

Translation Words - UST

• secretaries
• command, commandment
• name
• Ahasuerus
• people, people group,
• people, people group,
• and...writing
• and...writing
• the provinces
• the provinces
• province, provincial
• province, provincial
• in every language
• Then they sealed the letters with wax
• the king's
• all the governors
• king, kingdom, kingship
• the king's...the king's
• noble, nobleman, royal official
• administrators
Esther 3:13

Documents were hand-delivered by couriers

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “Couriers hand-delivered the documents” or “Courtiers gave the documents directly” (See: Active or Passive)

annihilate, kill, and destroy

These words mean the same thing and emphasize the completeness of the destruction. Alternate translation: “completely destroy” (See: Doublet)

thirteenth day of the twelfth month

“day thirteen of month twelve” (See: Ordinal Numbers)

which is the month of Adar

“Adar” is the name of the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. The thirteenth day is near the beginning of March on Western calendars. (See: Hebrew Months and How to Translate Names)

plunder

steal by force

Translation Words - ULT

- the Jews
- by...hand of
- to annihilate
- and to destroy
- the provinces of
- to slaughter
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- Jew, Jewish
- hand
- the empire, in order that everyone would be ready
- destroy, destruction, annihilate
- province
- slaughter, slaughtered
- in
Esther 3:14

A copy of the letter was made law in every province

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The officials in every province made a copy of the letter become the law” (See: Active or Passive)

province

A province is a large area into which some countries are divided for the purposes of government. See how you translated this in Esther 1:1.

In every province it was made known to all the people

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “They told all the people in every province” (See: Active or Passive)

this day

“that day”

Translation Words - ULT

- the peoples
- province
- by province

Translation Words - UST

- people...the people
- province
- province
Esther 3:15

The decree was also distributed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “They also distributed the decree” (See: Active or Passive)

the fortress

This refers to a castle, stronghold or fortified city. See how you translated this in Esther 1:2.

Susa

See how you translated the name of this place in Esther 1:2. (See: How to Translate Names)

was in turmoil

“was in a state of great confusion”

Translation Words - ULT

• and the law
• the king
• And the king
• the citadel
• by decree of

Translation Words - UST

• And one of the letters
• king
• Then the king
• in the capital city
• according to what the...commanded

ULT
15 The runners went out hurrying by decree of the king, and the law was given in Susa the citadel. And the king and Haman sat down to drink, but the city of Susa was in confusion. 3:4 [1] or perhaps as soon as they spoke to him (Hebrew Qere)

UST
15 Then, according to what the king commanded, men riding horses took these letter quickly to every province in the empire. And one of the letters was read aloud to the people in the capital city, Susa. Then the king and Haman sat down and drank wine, but the people in Susa were very perplexed about why this was going to happen.
Esther 4

Esther 4 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Mordecai warns Esther to act

Mordecai tells Esther she must beg the king for the Jews' lives, even if she risks her own death.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Implicit information

There is implicit information translators may not understand. “Who knows whether you have come to this royal position for such a time as this?” This means “maybe God made you the queen so you could save the Jews.” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
Esther 4:1

learned of all that had been done
“found out about those letters”

tore his clothes and put on sackcloth and ashes

These acts are signs of severe sadness. Alternate translation: “tore his clothes and put on sackcloth and ashes to show his grief” (See: Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT

• when Mordecai
• Mordecai
• sackcloth
• knew about

Translation Words - UST

• When Mordecai
• he was so anguish that
• rough sackcloth
• found out

ULT
Now Mordecai knew about all that had been done, tore his garments and put on sackcloth and ashes. And he went out into the midst of the city, and cried out a great and bitter outcry.

UST
When Mordecai found out about those letters, he was so anguish that he tore his clothes and put on rough sackcloth and threw ashes over himself. Then he went into the city, crying very loudly.
Excerpts from the translation notes for Esther 4:2:

**ULT**
2 And he came only as far as before the face of the gate of the king, because no one was to come into the gate of the king while wearing sackcloth.

**UST**
2 He stood outside the gate of the palace, because no one who was wearing sackcloth was allowed to enter the palace.
**Esther 4:3**

**province**
A province is a large area into which some countries are divided for the purposes of government. See how you translated this in Esther 1:1.

**there was great mourning among the Jews**
“the Jews mourned greatly”

**Many of them lay in sackcloth and ashes**
“Many of them were on the ground, dressed in sackcloth and sitting in ashes”

**Translation Words - ULT**
- by the Jews
- sackcloth
- province
- by province
- and his law
- the king
- and fasting
- the decree of

**Translation Words - UST**
- they...They
- put on sackcloth
- province of
- province of
- law, principle
- the king
- fasted
- the letter from

**ULT**
3 And in every province by province, any place where the decree of the king and his law reached, there was great mourning by the Jews, and fasting, and weeping, and lamenting: sackcloth and ashes were laid out by the multitudes.

**UST**
3 In every province of the empire, when the letter from the king was read to the Jewish people, they cried and mourned. They fasted and wailed loudly. Many of them also put on sackcloth and threw ashes on themselves and lay on the ground.
Esther 4:4

young women and her servants
“female servants and male servants”
to clothe Mordecai
“for Mordecai to wear”
Translation Words - ULT
• Mordecai
• Esther
• his sackcloth
• the queen
• the young female attendants of
Translation Words - UST
• Mordecai
• Esther’s
• the sackcloth
• she
• maids
Esther 4:5

Hathak

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

one of the king’s officials who had been assigned to serve her

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “one of the officials whom the king had assigned to serve her” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• She commanded him
• Mordecai
• Esther
• before her face
• the king...he

Translation Words - UST

• She told him to go out and talk
• Mordecai
• Esther
• to help take care of Esther
• king’s

ULT

5 So Esther called for Hathak, from the eunuchs of the king whom he had caused to stand before her face. She commanded him concerning Mordecai to know what this was and on account of what this was.

UST

5 Then Esther summoned Hathach, one of the king’s officials whom he had appointed to help take care of Esther. She told him to go out and talk to Mordecai to find out what was distressing him and why he was wearing sackcloth to show that he was grieving.
Esther 4:6

Hathak

See how you translated this man’s name in Esther 4:5. (See: How to Translate Names)

the city square

“the city plaza”

Translation Words - ULT

- Mordecai
- the gate of
- before the face of
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- Mordecai, who was
- gate
- front of
- the palace

ULT

6 So Hathak went out to Mordecai, to the open place of the city that was before the face of the gate of the king.

UST

6 Hathach went to Mordecai, who was in the plaza in front of the palace gate.
Esther 4:7

Haman

See how you translated this man's name in Esther 3:1. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- against the Jews
- Mordecai
- the...silver
- to destroy them
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- Jew, Jewish
- Mordecai...He
- money
- if the king commanded that all the Jews be killed
- the government

ULT

7 And Mordecai reported to him all that had happened to him, and the exact amount of silver that Haman had said to weigh out into the treasuries of the king, against the Jews, to destroy them.

UST

7 Mordecai told him everything that had happened. He told him how much money Haman had promised to give to the government if the king commanded that all the Jews be killed.
Esther 4:8

He also gave him

“Mordecai also gave Hathak”

to beg for his favor

“to beg for the king's favor”

Translation Words - ULT

• Esther
• his
• her people
• to...annihilate them
• the law
• from before his face
• the king
• and to plead

Translation Words - UST

• Esther
• the king
• her people
• which said that all the Jews must be killed
• the decree
• to act mercifully
• the king
• to act mercifully

ULT

8 Also he gave to him a copy of the writing of the law that had been given in Susa to annihilate them, in order to show Esther, and to inform her, and to lay a charge upon her to go to the king to implore his favor and to plead from before his face concerning her people.

UST

8 Mordecai also gave to Hathach a copy of the decree that had been read in Susa, which said that all the Jews must be killed. He told Hathach to show the copy to Esther. He told Hathach to explain to Esther what it meant. Then he told him to urge her to go to the king and request the king to act mercifully to her people.
Esther 4:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Mordecai
- Esther

Translation Words - UST

- Mordecai
- to Esther...her

ULT
9 So Hathak went and told Esther the words of Mordecai.

UST
9 So Hathach returned to Esther and told her what Mordecai said.
Esther 4:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- and commanded him
- Mordecai
- Esther

Translation Words - UST

- to return...and tell this
- Mordecai...him
- Esther

ULT
10 Then Esther spoke to Hathak and commanded him to say to Mordecai:

UST
10 Then Esther told Hathach to return to Mordecai and tell this to him:
Esther 4:11

if any man or woman goes to the king...the king holds out the golden scepter

This conditional clause can be expressed as a statement. It may also be helpful to divide it into two sentences. Alternate translation: “no man or woman is allowed to go to the king inside the inner courtyard unless the king summons them. The person who breaks this law will be executed unless the king holds out his golden scepter to him”

thirty days

“30 days” (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

• then he will live
• the provinces of
• for...his law
• to cause to die
• the king
• the king
• the king
• the king
• the scepter of
• gold
• the servants of
• know

Translation Words - UST

• life, live, living, alive
• in the empire
• law, principle
• die, dead, deadly, death,
• the king's
• in the empire
• king, kingdom, kingship
• king, kingdom, kingship
• king, kingdom, kingship
• scepter
• gold, golden
• officials
• know
Esther 4:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- to Mordecai
- Esther

Translation Words - UST

- to Mordecai...him
- Esther

ULT
12 So they told to Mordecai the words of Esther.

UST
12 So Hathach went back to Mordecai and told him what Esther had said.
Esther 4:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Jews
- to yourself
- Mordecai
- Esther
- in the palace of
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- Jews
- think that just because you live
- Mordecai
- Esther
- there in
- the palace

ULT
13 Then Mordecai said to return to Esther: "Do not think to yourself to escape in the palace of the king, from all the Jews.

UST
13 Mordecai told Hathach to tell this to Esther: "Do not think that just because you live there in the palace, you will escape when all the other Jews are killed."
Esther 4:14

Relief and rescue will rise up for the Jews from another place

Here “relief” and “rescue” are spoken of as if they are living things that can rise up. Alternate translation: “someone else will rise up from another place and rescue the Jews” (See: Personification)

Who knows whether you have come to this royal position for such a time as this?

The purpose of this question is to have Esther think deeply about her role in this situation. Alternate translation: “Who knows, perhaps it was for just for a time like this that you were made queen.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- will perish
- for the Jews
- your father
- at royalty
- and deliverance
- and the house of
- knows

Translation Words - UST

- will be killed
- some of us Jews
- and your relatives
- here as queen
- will rescue
- and your relatives
- Furthermore, perhaps
Then Esther said to return to Mordecai:

ULT
15 Then Esther said to return to Mordecai:

UST
15 Then after Hathach told this to Esther, she told him to return to Mordecai and say this to him:
Esther 4:16

Susā

See how you translated the name of this place in Esther 1:2. (See: How to Translate Names)

Fast for me...will fast

Fasting was a symbolic act that the Jews did when they were praying intensely. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “fast and pray for me...will fast and pray” (See: Symbolic Action)

Three days

“3 days” (See: Numbers and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• I perish
• I perish
• the Jews
• is...according to the law
• the king
• And fast

Translation Words - UST

• I am executed...by seeing him when he does not hold out the scepter toward me
• I am willing for that
• the Jews
• the law
• the king
• and tell them to fast

ULT
16 “Go, gather all the Jews who are found in Susa. And fast on account of me, neither eating nor drinking for three days, both night and day. Also, I myself and my young female attendants will fast likewise. Then, in such circumstances, I will go to the king, which is not according to the law; and if I perish, I perish.”

UST
16 “Gather together all the Jews here in Susa, and tell them to fast for my sake. Tell them to not eat or drink anything for three days and nights. My maids and I will also fast. Then, I will go to talk to the king. Even if I am executed for disobeying the law by seeing him when he does not hold out the scepter toward me, I am willing for that.”
Esther 4:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Mordecai
- Esther

Translation Words - UST

- Mordecai
- Esther

ULT

17 So Mordecai went and did according to the whole charge that Esther had laid upon him.

UST

17 So after Hathach told this to Mordecai, Mordecai went and did what Esther told him to do.
Esther 5

Esther 5 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins a section about Haman’s fall (Chapters 5-7).

Special concepts in this chapter

Esther’s respect

Esther approached the king with the utmost of respect. By doing this, her character became respected by the king. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
Esther 5:1

**facing the entrance to the house**

“across the room from the entrance of the house” or “looking toward the entrance to the house”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Esther
- the palace of
- in...palace
- the palace
- royalty
- his royal
- the royal
- throne
- the king
- the king
- Now the king
- the house of

**Translation Words - UST**

- Esther...she
- the palace
- the entrance of
- facing
- the robes that showed that she was queen
- the throne
- the room
- the throne
- the palace
- the king was
- He was
- the room where

**ULT**

1 Now it happened on the third day, that Esther put on royalty and stood in the inner court of the palace of the king, opposite to the house of the king. Now the king was sitting on his royal throne in the royal palace, opposite to the entrance of the palace.

**UST**

1 Three days later, Esther prepared a big banquet. Then she put on the robes that showed that she was queen, and she went to the inner courtyard of the palace, across from the room where the king was. He was sitting on the throne, facing the entrance of the room.
Esther 5:2

she received approval in his eyes

The word “eyes” refers to his sight and is a metaphor for his evaluation of her. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “he was pleased with her” or “he approved of her” (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

He held out to her the golden scepter in his hand

He did this to show that he was pleased with her.

touched the tip of the scepter

She probably did this to show that she respected his authority and was thankful for his kindness to her.

Translation Words - ULT

• favor
• Esther
• to Esther
• Esther
• was in his hand
• the head of
• the queen
• the king
• king (2)
• scepter of
• the scepter
• the...gold

Translation Words - UST

• would be glad to talk
• Esther
• toward her
• Esther
• hand
• the tip of
• Esther
• the king
• he (2)
• scepter
• the scepter
• gold
Esther 5:3

Up to half of my kingdom, it will be given to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “If you ask for up to half of my kingdom, I will give it to you” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- Esther
- the queen
- the king
- the kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- Esther
- Esther
- the king
- my kingdom

ULT
3 And the king said to her, "What is to you, Esther the queen? And what is your request? As much as half of the kingdom, and let it be given to you."

UST
3 Then the king asked her, “Esther, what do you want? Tell me, and I will give you what you want, even if you ask me to give you half of my kingdom!”
Esther 5:4

If it pleases the king, let the king and Haman come... for him

In order to show respect to a king, people sometimes did not call him "you." This can be translated with the word "you" along with other words that show respect. Alternate translation: “O King, if it pleases you, come and bring Haman...for you” or “If you are willing to do this, Sir, come, and let Haman come with you...for you” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Haman

See how you translated this man’s name in Esther 3:1. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• it is good
• Esther
• the banquet
• the king
• the king

Translation Words - UST

• pleases
• Esther
• the banquet
• Your majesty...you
• you

ULT

4 And Esther said, "If it is good to the king, let the king come with Haman today to the banquet that I have made for him."

UST

4 Esther replied, “Your majesty, if it pleases you, you and Haman come to the banquet that I have prepared for you!”
Esther 5:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Esther
- Esther
- the banquet
- the king
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- Esther
- Esther
- the banquet
- The king
- the king

ULT

5 Then the king said, "Bring Haman quickly, in order to do the word of Esther." And the king came with Haman to the banquet that Esther had made.

UST

5 The king said to his servants, “Go and tell Haman to come quickly to a banquet that Esther has prepared for the two of us!” So the king and Haman went to the banquet that Esther had prepared for them.
Esther 5:6

What is your petition

The abstract noun "petition" can be expressed with the verb "ask for" or "want"? Alternate translation: “What do you ask for” or “What do you want” (See: Abstract Nouns)

It will be granted you

This can be expressed in active form. Alternate translation: “I will give you what you ask for” or “I will do for you what you ask” (See: Active or Passive)

What is your request

The abstract noun "request" can be expressed with the verb "ask for" or "want"? Alternate translation: “What do you ask for” or “What do you want” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Up to half of the kingdom, it will be granted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “If you ask for up to half of my kingdom, I will give it to you” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- to Esther
- during the banquet of
- the king
- wine
- the kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- to Esther
- While they were drinking
- the king
- wine
- of my kingdom
Esther 5:7

My petition and my request

The words “petition” and “request” mean the same thing. She probably used these words together as a way of speaking very formally and respectfully to the king. (See: Doublet)

Translation Words - ULT

• Esther

Translation Words - UST

• Esther
Esther 5:8

if I have found favor in the eyes of the king and if it pleases the king

In order to show respect to a king, people sometimes did not call him "you." This can be translated with the word "you" along with other words that show respect. Alternate translation: “if you are pleased with me, O King, and if it pleases you” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

if I have found favor in the eyes of the king

“Find favor” here is an idiom that means be approved of or that he is pleased with her. “In the eyes of the king” is a metaphor representing his evaluation. Alternate translation: “if the king evaluates me and approves” or “if the king is pleased with me” (See: Idiom and Metaphor)

let the king and Haman come

This can be translated with the word "you" along with other words that show respect. Alternate translation: “please come and bring Haman” or “please come and let Haman come with you” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

I will answer the king’s question

This can be translated with the word "you" along with other words that show respect. Alternate translation: “I will answer your question” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT

- favor
- it is good
- the banquet
- the king
- the king
- the king
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- are pleased
- are willing
- another feast
- you
- you
- your
Esther 5:9

Mordecai neither rose up

Rising was a sign of respect. Mordecai did not give Haman special respect. (See: Symbolic Action)

he was filled with rage

Being “filled with rage” represents being very angry. Alternate translation: he was extremely angry” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- and good of
- Mordecai
- Mordecai
- at the gate of
- joyful
- trembled
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- feeling very happy
- feeling very happy
- Mordecai
- Mordecai
- sitting at the gate of
- feeling very happy
- tremble fearfully
- the palace

ULT

9 And Haman went out that day joyful and good of heart. But as soon as Haman saw Mordecai at the gate of the king, that he neither rose up nor trembled from him, then Haman was filled with rage on account of Mordecai.

UST

9 Haman was feeling very happy as he left the banquet. But then he saw Mordecai sitting at the gate of the palace. Mordecai did not stand up and tremble fearfully in front of Haman, so Haman became extremely angry.
Esther 5:10

Nevertheless

This can be translated with a phrase. “Even though he was so angry”

Haman restrained himself

Restraining himself represents refusing to do something that he wanted very much to do. Haman wanted to show Mordecai that he was very angry. Alternate translation: “Haman refused to show how angry he was” (See: Metaphor)

Zeresh

This is a woman’s name. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• his house

Translation Words - UST

• home
Esther 5:11

Haman recounted to them the splendor of his riches

“Splendor” and “riches” are both abstract nouns. Alternate translation: “Haman told them about how great his wealth was” or “Haman told them about the many great things he owned” (See: Abstract Nouns)

all the promotions by which the king honored him

The abstract noun "promotion" can be expressed with the verb “promote.” It means that the king gave him more important work. Alternate translation: “How the king had promoted him many times and honored him” or “how the king had honored him many times by giving him more important work” (See: Abstract Nouns)

how he had advanced above all the officials and the servants of the king

Advancing above people represents becoming more important than them. Alternate translation: “how he had become more important than all the officials and the servants of the king” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• his sons
• the glory of
• and administrators of
• the king
• the king
• the officials

Translation Words - UST

• children
• being very
• all the other officials
• the king
• all the other officials
• all the other officials
Esther 5:12

no one else but me

This can be expressed positively. Alternate translation: “only me”

Translation Words - ULT

- Esther
- the banquet
- the queen
- the king
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- Esther...she
- a banquet
- Queen
- the king
- is inviting only the two of us to another banquet that she will prepare

ULT

12 And Haman said, “In addition, Esther the queen did not bring anyone with the king to the banquet that she had made except me. And also for tomorrow, I am called by her with the king.

UST

12 Then Haman added, “And that is not all! Queen Esther invited just two of us, me and the king, to a banquet she prepared for us today. And she is inviting only the two of us to another banquet that she will prepare tomorrow!”
Esther 5:13

is worth nothing to me

“does not make me happy” or “does not satisfy me”

Translation Words - ULT

- the Jew
- Mordecai
- at the gate of
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- Jew
- Mordecai
- at the gate
- of the palace

ULT
13 But all of this is not equal for me to every time that I see Mordecai the Jew sitting at the gate of the king."

UST
13 Then Haman said, “But those things mean nothing to me while I keep seeing that Jew, Mordecai, just sitting there at the gate of the palace and ignoring me!”
Esther 5:14

a gallows

a structure used for killing a person by tying one end of a rope around the top of the structure and the other end of the rope around the person’s neck and hanging him from it. See how you translated this in Esther 2:23. (See: Translate Unknowns)

fifty cubits high

“50 cubits high.” You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: “twenty-three meters high” (See: Numbers and Biblical Distance)

he had the gallows constructed

“he told people to construct the gallows”

This pleased Haman

“Haman liked this idea”

Translation Words - ULT

- Mordecai
- the
- joyful
- before the face of
- to the king
- the king
- and let them hang

Translation Words - UST

- Mordecai
- the banquet
- and be cheerful
- Haman
- the king
- the king
- to hang

ULT

14 Then Zeresh his wife, with all of his friends, said to him, “Let them make a tree fifty cubits high. And in the morning say to the king, and let them hang Mordecai on it. Then go with the king to the banquet joyful.” And the word was good before the face of Haman, and he made the tree.

UST

14 So Haman's wife Zeresh and all his friends who were there suggested, “Why don't you quickly set up a gallows. Make it 75 feet tall. Then tomorrow morning ask the king to hang Mordecai on it. After that, you can go to the banquet with the king and be cheerful.” That idea pleased Haman very much, so he gave men orders to set up the gallows.
Esther 6

Esther 6 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter continues the story of Haman’s fall.

Special concepts in this chapter

Approaching the king

It was not possible for a person to easily approach the king. Normally, access to him was very limited. There are several events in this chapter which show the layers of protection surrounding the king.
Esther 6:1

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• before the face of
• the king
• the king

Translation Words - UST

• to
• the king
• the king

ULT

1 That night the sleep of the king fled away. And he said to bring the book of records of the events of days, and they were being called out before the face of the king.

UST

1 That night the king was unable to sleep, so he summoned a servant and told him to bring the records of what had happened during all the time he had been king. So the servant brought the records and read some of them to the king.
Esther 6:2

Bigthana and Teresh

These are the names of two men. See how your translated their names in Esther 2:21. (See: How to Translate Names)

It was found recorded there

Here “found” is an metaphor for learning. Both “found” and “recorded” can be expressed in active form. Alternate translation: “They found that the writers had recorded there” or “They learned that the writers had written” (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• Mordecai
• Ahasuerus
• a hand
• the doorway
• the king
• against the king
• they had sought

Translation Words - UST

• Mordecai...he
• the king
• to assassinate
• the entrance to the king's rooms
• the king
• the king
• they planned...it

ULT

2 And it was found written that Mordecai had told about Bigthana and Teresh, two of the eunuchs of the king who were from the guardians of the doorway, that they had sought to stretch out a hand against the king Ahasuerus.

UST

2 The servant read about Bigthana and Teresh, the two men who had guarded the entrance to the king's rooms. He read the account of when Mordecai had found out that they planned to assassinate the king and that he had told the king about it.
Esther 6:3

What was done to give honor

This can be expressed in active form. Alternate translation: “What did I do to give honor” or “What did we do to give honor” (See: Active or Passive)

Nothing was done for him

This can be expressed in active form. However it may be good to find a way that does not give the impression that servants were accusing the king. Alternate translation: “No one did anything for Mordecai” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• honor
• for Mordecai
• the king
• the king
• the young men of
• who served him

Translation Words - UST

• to reward
• Mordecai
• The king
• his
• some of
• servants...The servants
Esther 6:4

Haman
See how you translated this man’s name in Esther 3:1

the outer courtyard
“the first courtyard from the outside”

hanging Mordecai
It can be made clear what the purpose of hanging him was. Alternate translation: “killing Mordecai by hanging him” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the gallows he set up for him
The gallows was a structure that was used to kill people by hanging them from it. See how you translated “gallows” in Esther 5:14. Alternate translation: “the structure Haman set up for hanging Mordecai” (See: Translate Unknowns)

set up
“built”

Translation Words - ULT

• Mordecai
• the king
• to the king
• to hang
• the house of

Translation Words - UST

• Mordecai
• The king saw him
• the palace
• to the king
• about hanging
• the palace

ULT
4 Then the king asked, “Who is in the court?” Now Haman had come into the outer court of the house of the king to say to the king to hang Mordecai on the tree that he had prepared for him.

UST
4 At that moment, Haman entered the outer courtyard of the palace. He wanted to talk to the king about hanging Mordecai on the gallows that he had just set up. The king saw him and said, “Who is that out there in the courtyard?”
Esther 6:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- the king
- the king
- the young men of

**Translation Words - UST**

- His
- The king
- servants

**ULT**

5 And *the young men of the king* said to him, "Behold, Haman is standing in the courtyard." And *the king* said, "Let him come."

**UST**

5 *His servants* replied, "That is Haman standing there in the courtyard." *The king* said, "Bring him in here!"
Esther 6:6

**What should be done for the man whom the king takes pleasure in honoring**

Here the king speaks of himself in the third person. This can be stated in first person and in active form. Alternate translation: “What should I do for the man whom I take pleasure in honoring” (See: First, Second or Third Person and Active or Passive)

**The king takes pleasure in honoring**

Taking pleasure in doing something is an idiom for being glad to do something or wanting to do something. Alternate translation: “the king is glad to honor” or “the king wants to honor” (See: Idiom)

**said in his heart**

The heart represents the thoughts and attitudes. Alternate translation: “thought” or “said to himself” (See: Metaphor)

**Whom would the king take pleasure in honoring more than me?**

This can be expressed as a statement. “Surely there is no one whom the king would take pleasure in honoring more than me!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- in his heart
- in...honor
- honor
- is delighted
- would...delight
- the king
- the king
- the king

**Translation Words - UST**

- to himself
- to honor
- honor
- want
- would...like
- the king
- I
- the king
Esther 6:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• in...honor
• is delighted
• the king
• the king

Translation Words - UST

• to honor
• wish
• the king
• you

ULT

7 So Haman said to the king, “For a man in whose honor the king is delighted:

UST

7 So he replied to the king, “If there is someone you wish to honor,
Esther 6:8

let royal robes be brought

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “let someone bring royal robes” or “tell your servants to bring royal robes” (See: Active or Passive)

on whose head is the royal crest

The word “whose” refers to the horse. The royal crest is a special symbol that represents the king’s family.

Translation Words - ULT

- royal
- royal
- the king
- the king
- and a horse
- a...crown

Translation Words - UST

- one of the robes you wear
- to show that it belongs to you, the king
- to show that you are the king
- you
- Also...one of the horses
- something
Esther 6:9

Then let the robes and the horse be given

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Then let them give the robes and the horse” or “Then tell them to give the robes and the horse” (See: Active or Passive)

Let them dress...in honoring, and let them lead him

“Tell them to dress...in honoring and to lead him”

Let them proclaim

“Tell the noble official and servants to proclaim”

Translation Words - ULT

- and proclaim
- in...honor
- in...honor
- the hand of
- is delighted
- is delighted
- before his face
- the king
- the king
- the king (2)
- and this horse
- the horse
- from the...officials of
- most noble

Translation Words - UST

- to keep shouting
- to honor
- to honor
- hand
- want
- wants
- to keep shouting
- your
- you
- he (2)
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- the horse...the horse
- of
- very important officials...man...official

ULT
9 Then give this garment and this horse into the hand of a man from the most noble officials of the king. And let them clothe the man in whose honor the king is delighted, and parade him on the horse in the open square of the city, and proclaim before his face, 'Thus shall it be done for the man in whose honor the king is delighted!''

UST
9 Then tell one of your very important officials to put the robe on the man whom you want to honor, and tell that man to sit on the horse, and then lead the horse through the city streets. And tell that official to keep shouting, 'This is what the king does for the man whom he wants to honor!''
Esther 6:10

Do not fail in a single matter of what you have said

The phrase “a single matter” emphasizes that he must do absolutely everything he said. It can be stated positively. Alternate translation: “Be sure to do absolutely everything you have said”

Translation Words - ULT

- the Jew
- for Mordecai
- at the gate of
- the king
- the king
- the horse

Translation Words - UST

- the Jew
- for Mordecai
- at the gate of
- The king
- the palace
- horse

ULT

10 So the king said to Haman, “Hurry, take the garment and the horse, according to how you have spoken, and do thus for Mordecai the Jew, the man who sits at the gate of the king. Do not allow a word to fail of all that you have spoken.”

UST

10 The king replied to Haman, “Fine. Go and do what you said immediately! Get my robe and my horse, and do just what you suggested! Do it for Mordecai, the Jew, who is sitting outside at the gate of the palace. Do not forget anything that you suggested!”
Esther 6:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- and called out
- in...honor
- Mordecai
- is delighted
- before his face
- the king
- the horse

Translation Words - UST

- proclaiming
- to honor
- Mordecai
- wants
- proclaiming
- the king
- horse

ULT
11 So Haman took the garment and the horse, and he clothed Mordecai and paraded him in the open square of the city, and called out before his face, "Thus shall it be done for the man in whose honor the king is delighted!"

UST
11 So Haman did what the king said. He got the robe and the horse. He put the robe on Mordecai, and as Mordecai sat on the horse, Haman led the horse through the city streets proclaiming "This is what the king does for the man whom the king wants to honor!"
Esther 6:12

with his head covered

People often covered their head to show that they were either extremely sad or ashamed. (See: Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT

• Mordecai
• the gate of
• head
• the king
• his house

Translation Words - UST

• Mordecai
• the gate of
• his face
• the palace
• home

ULT
12 Then Mordecai returned to the gate of the king, but Haman hurried to his house, mourning with a covering of head.

UST
12 Then, Mordecai returned and sat at the gate of the palace. But Haman hurried home, covering his face because he felt completely disgraced.
Then Haman recounted to Zeresh his wife and to all his friends everything that had happened to him. Then his wise men and Zeresh his wife said to him, “If Mordecai, before whose face you have begun to fall, is from the seed of the Jews, then you will not prevail against him, but you will surely fall before his face.”

Haman told his wife Zeresh and his friends everything that had happened to him that day. Then his wife and his friends said to him, “Mordecai, the man who has caused you to be completely disgraced, is a Jew. It is clear that the God whom the Jews worship is fighting for them. So you will never be able to defeat Mordecai. He will defeat you!”

**Translation Words - ULT**
- the Jews
- Mordecai
- his wise men
- is from the seed of
- before...face
- before his face

**Translation Words - UST**
- Jew
- Mordecai, the man
- his friends
- a
- disgraced
- you
Esther 6:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• Esther
• the banquet
• the king

Translation Words - UST

• Esther
• the banquet
• the king's

ULT
14 They were still speaking with him when the eunuchs of the king arrived. And they hurried to bring Haman to the banquet that Esther had made.

UST
14 And while they were still talking, some of the king's officials arrived to take Haman quickly to the banquet that Esther had prepared.
Esther 7

Esther 7 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of Haman's fall concludes in this chapter.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Covering Haman's face

When “the servants covered Haman's face,” they were showing that he had been condemned to be executed. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and condemn, condemned, condemnation)
Esther 7:1

Haman

See how you translated this man's name in Esther 3:1. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• Esther
• the queen
• the king

Translation Words - UST

• Esther had prepared
• Queen
• the king

ULT

1 So the king came with Haman to drink with Esther the queen.

UST

1 So the king and Haman went to eat at the second banquet that Queen Esther had prepared.
Esther 7:2

On this second day
“on this second day of feasting”

while they were serving wine
“while the servants were pouring the wine and giving it to them”

What is your petition
The abstract noun “petition” can be expressed with the verb “ask for” or “want.” Alternate translation: “What do you ask for” or “What do you want” (See: Abstract Nouns)

It will be granted to you
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will give you what you ask for” or “I will do for you what you ask” (See: Active or Passive)

Up to half of the kingdom, and it will be granted
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “If you ask for up to half of my kingdom, I will give it to you” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT
- to Esther
- Esther
- during...banquet of
- the queen
- the king
- the...wine
- the kingdom

Translation Words - UST
- Esther
- you...for you
- As they were drinking
- you...for you
- the king
- wine
- my kingdom
Esther 7:3

If I have found favor in your eyes, king

“Find favor” here is an idiom that means to be approved of or that he is pleased with her. “In your eyes” is a metaphor representing his evaluation. Alternate translation: “If you evaluate me and approve” or “If you are pleased with me” (See: Idiom and Metaphor)

dthis is my petition

The abstract noun "petition" can be expressed with the verb "ask for." Alternate translation: “this is what I ask for” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- my life
- favor
- it is good
- Esther
- and my people
- the queen
- O king
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- me
- pleased
- willing to do what I ask
- Esther
- and...my people
- Esther
- O king
- you are

ULT

3 Then Esther the queen answered and said, “If I have found favor in your eyes, O king, and if it is good to the king, let my life be given to me at my petition, and my people at my request.

UST

3 Esther replied, “O king, if you are pleased with me, and if you are willing to do what I ask, save me, and save my people. That is what I want you to do for me.”
Esther 7:4

For we have been sold

The metaphor “being sold” represents being betrayed. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “For someone has betrayed us” or “For someone has put us in danger of our enemies” (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

to be destroyed, killed, and annihilated

Here all three words have the same meaning and are used for emphasis. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “for our enemies to destroy, kill, and annihilate us” (See: Doublet and Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• and my people
• for annihilation
• and for destruction
• for slaughter
• the king

Translation Words - UST

• I and my people...we
• to people who want to completely destroy us
• to people who want to completely destroy us
• to people who want to completely destroy us
• you, the king

ULT

4 For we have been sold, I and my people, for annihilation, for slaughter, and for destruction. Now if we had been sold as slaves and female servants, I would have kept silent, because the distress would not have been equal to a burden of the king.

UST

4 It is as though I and my people are cattle that have been sold to be slaughtered. It is as though we have been sold to people who want to completely destroy us. If we had only been sold to people to become their male and female slaves, I would not say anything, because that would have been a matter too small to bother you, the king.”
Esther 7:5

Where is this person to be found who has filled his heart to do such a thing

To fill one's heart to do something is an idiom meaning to dare to do something. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Where is the one who has dared to do such a thing” (See: Idiom and Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- Ahasuerus
- to Esther
- the queen
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- would want
- Xerxes
- her
- her
- King
Esther 7:6

was terrified
“was extremely afraid”

Translation Words - ULT

• evil
• Esther
• an adversary
• and the queen
• from before the face of
• the king

Translation Words - UST

• evil man
• Esther
• who is our enemy is
• and queen
• as he stood in front of
• the king

ULT
6 Esther answered, "A man, an adversary, and an enemy is this evil Haman!" Then Haman was terrified from before the face of the king and the queen.

UST
6 Esther replied, "The man who is our enemy is this evil man Haman!" Then Haman was terrified as he stood in front of the king and queen.
The king got up in a rage

Being in a rage is an idiom for being extremely angry. Alternate translation: “The king was extremely angry and got up” (See: Idiom)

to beg for his life from Queen Esther

“He was extremely angry and immediately left his wine and got up to beg Queen Esther to save his life”

He saw that disaster was being decided

Here seeing represents realizing or understanding. Alternate translation: “He realized that disaster was being decided” (See: Metaphor)

disaster was being decided against him by the king

This can be stated in active form. The abstract noun “disaster” can be expressed with the more concrete verbs “destroy” or “kill.” Alternate translation: “the king was deciding to cause a disaster against him” or “the king was deciding to destroy him” (See: Active or Passive and Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

• his life
• evil
• from Esther
• the palace
• from...banquet of
• the queen
• Then the king
• the king
• in order to seek
• the...wine
• in his rage

Translation Words - UST

• would spare his life
• evil, wicked, unpleasant
• with...Esther that she
• the palace
• his wine and
• Queen
• The king...He
• king, kingdom, kingship
• in order to plead
• his wine and
• became extremely angry
Esther 7:8

where the wine had been served

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "where servants had served the wine" (See: Active or Passive)

couch

a long piece of furniture where a person can sit or lie down

Will he assault the queen in my presence in my own house?

The king uses this question to show his shock and anger at what Haman was doing. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "He even dares to attack the queen in my presence and in my own house!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

assault the queen

“attack the queen.” This phrase is a polite way to refer to rape. (See: Euphemism)

As soon as this sentence came out of the king's mouth

Speech coming out of the mouth is a metonym that represents speaking. Alternate translation: “As soon as the king said this” (See: Metonymy)

the servants covered Haman's face

Apparently they did this because they understood that the king wanted Haman to be killed. Alternate translation: “the servants covered Haman's face as a sign that he would be killed” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT

- Esther
- the palace
- the banquet of
- the queen
- when...the face of
- when the king
- the king
- the king (2)
- wine
- the house of
- in the house

Translation Words - UST

- Esther
- from the garden
• they had been eating
• queen...she is
• head
• But at that moment the king
• He
• the king (2)
• they had been eating
• the room where
• here...in my own palace
Esther 7:9

Harbona

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

A gallows fifty cubits tall

You may convert “fifty cubits” to a modern measure. See how you translated a similar phrase in Esther 5:14. Alternate translation: “A gallows twenty-three meters high” (See: Numbers and Biblical Distance)

Translation Words - ULT

- good
- for Mordecai
- before the face of
- the king
- the king (2)
- the king
- Hang him
- at the house of

Translation Words - UST

- spared...life
- for Mordecai, the man
- personal
- the king's
- your (2)
- The king
- Hang him
- near...house

ULT

9 Then Harbona, one from the eunuchs before the face of the king, said, “Also, behold, the tree that Haman made for Mordecai, who spoke good for the king, is standing at the house of Haman fifty cubits high.” And the king said, “Hang him on it.”

UST

9 Then Harbona, one of the king's personal officials, said, “Outside, near Haman's house, there is a gallows. It is 75 feet high. Haman made it for Mordecai, the man who spared your life!” The king said, “Hang him on it!”
Esther 7:10

Then the king's rage died down

The king's rage is a spoken of as if it were a large fire that became smaller. Alternate translation: “Then the king's rage lessened” or “Then the king was not so angry” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• for Mordecai
• the king
• So they hanged
• and the rage of

Translation Words - UST

• for hanging Mordecai
• the king's
• So they hanged
• And then...anger

ULT

10 So they hanged Haman on the tree that he had prepared for Mordecai, and the rage of the king subsided.

UST

10 So they hanged Haman on the gallows that he had prepared for hanging Mordecai! And then the king's anger cooled off.
Esther 8

Esther 8 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

God's protection

Yahweh is at work in this chapter preventing the Jews from possible destruction. God used Esther and Mordecai to protect their people.
Esther 8:1

Haman

See how you translated this man's name in Esther 3:1.

Translation Words - ULT

- the Jews
- And Mordecai
- Ahasuerus
- to Esther
- Esther
- the adversary of
- the queen
- before the face of
- the king
- the king
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- Jew, Jewish
- Mordecai
- Xerxes
- Esther
- Esther
- the enemy of
- Queen
- in
- King
- the king that...the king...he
- everything that...owned

ULT

1 On that day, the king Ahasuerus gave to Esther the queen the house of Haman, the adversary of the Jews. And Mordecai came before the face of the king, because Esther told what he was to her.

UST

1 Later on that same day, King Xerxes declared that everything that Haman, the enemy of the Jews, owned, would now belong to Queen Esther. Esther told the king that Mordecai was her cousin. When the king heard that, he sent a message to tell Mordecai to come in.
**Esther 8:2**

**signet ring**

This ring had the king's name or mark on it. When he put a wax seal on important papers, he would press the mark onto the seal. If a paper had this mark on its seal, people would know that what was written on the paper was written with the king's authority and had to be obeyed. See how you translated this in Esther 3:10. (See: Translate Unknowns)

**gave it to Mordecai**

By giving his signet ring to Mordecai, the king gave Mordecai the authority to write important papers that people would have to obey.

**Haman's estate**

This refers to the things that had belonged to Haman and that the king had given to Esther.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- to Mordecai
- Mordecai
- Esther
- the king
- the house of

**Translation Words - UST**

- to Mordecai
- Mordecai
- Esther
- the king
- everything that had belonged
Esther 8:3

pleaded with
“begged”

to put an end to the evil plan of Haman the Agagite
“Put an end to” here is an idiom meaning to stop something. Alternate translation: “to stop the evil plan of Haman the Agagite” or “to prevent the evil things from happening that Haman the Agagite had planned” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the Agagite
See how you translated this in Esther 3:1

scheme that he had devised
“the plot that he had invented” or “the plot that Haman invented”

Translation Words - ULT

• the Jews
• the evil of
• Esther
• and implored favor
• before the face of
• before the face of (2)
• the king

Translation Words - UST

• all the Jews
• kill
• Esther
• She wanted to plead
• to
• at (2)
• the king

ULT
3 Then Esther repeated her action, and she spoke before the face of the king. She fell before the face of his feet and wept and implored favor from him to take away the evil of Haman the Agagite and his plot that he had plotted against the Jews.

UST
3 Esther again came to talk to the king. She prostrated herself at his feet, crying. She wanted to plead for him to stop what Haman had planned, to kill all the Jews.
Esther 8:4

the king held out the golden scepter to Esther

He did this to show that he was pleased with her. See how you translated a similar phrase in Esther 5:2

Translation Words - ULT

- to Esther
- Esther
- before the face of
- the king
- the scepter of
- gold

Translation Words - UST

- toward Esther
- Esther
- in front of
- The king
- him
- scepter
- gold

ULT

4 And the king held out to Esther the scepter of gold, so Esther rose up and stood before the face of the king.

UST

4 The king held out his gold scepter toward Esther, so Esther arose and stood in front of him.
Esther 8:5

If it pleases the king

“...if what I ask for pleases the king”

if I have found favor in your eyes

Here “found favor” is an idiom that means be approved of or that he is pleased with her. Here “eyes” are a metonym for sight, and sight is a metaphor representing his evaluation. Alternate translation: “if you have evaluated me and approve” or “if you are pleased with me” (See: Idiom and Metonymy and Metaphor)

if the thing seems right before the king

“Before the king” here is a metaphor representing his evaluation. Alternate translation: “if what I ask for seems right in the king's evaluation” (See: Metaphor)

I am pleasing in your eyes

Here “your eyes” is a metonym for sight, and sight is a metaphor representing his evaluation. Alternate translation: “if you evaluate me and I please you” or “if you are pleased with me” (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

revoke

take back and make of no effect

Hammedatha

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

provinces

A province is a large area into which some countries are divided for the purposes of government. See how you translated this in Esther 1:1.

Translation Words - ULT

• the Jews
• favor
• son of
• it is good
• and...am good
• to destroy
• the provinces of
• before his face
• before the face of
• the king
• the king
• the king

ULT
5 And she said, “If it is good to the king, and if I have found favor before his face, and the word is proper before the face of the king, and I am good in his eyes, let it be written to bring back the letters, the plot of Haman son of Hammedatha the Agagite, which he wrote to destroy the Jews who are in all of the provinces of the king.

UST
5 She said, “Your majesty, if you are pleased with me, and if you think that it is the right thing to do, make a new law to cancel what Haman decreed, that all the Jews in all the provinces in your empire should be killed.
Translation Words - UST

- the Jews
- pleased
- Haman
- the right thing to do
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- should be killed
- the provinces
- are...you
- face, facial
- Your majesty...you
- king, kingdom, kingship
- in your empire
Esther 8:6

For how could I bear to see disaster fall on my people? How could I endure watching the destruction of my relatives?

Esther used these questions to show that she would be extremely sad if her people were to be destroyed. Alternate translation: “I cannot bear to see disaster fall on the Jews. I cannot endure watching my relatives be killed.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- the evil
- my people
- the destruction

Translation Words - UST

- killed
- all the rest of my people
- destroy, destruction, annihilate

ULT

6 For how could I bear to see the evil that my people would find? And how could I bear seeing the destruction of my kindred?"

UST

6 I cannot endure seeing all my family and all the rest of my people killed."
Esther 8:7

the house of Haman

This represents all that Haman had owned. Alternate translation: “all that had belonged to Haman” or “all of Haman's property” (See: Synecdoche)

gallows

See how you translated this in Esther 6:4

Translation Words - ULT

• the Jew
• against the Jews
• and to Mordecai
• Ahasuerus
• to Esther
• to Esther
• his hand
• the queen
• the king
• they have hanged
• the house of

Translation Words - UST

• and Mordecai
• Jew, Jewish
• and Mordecai
• Xerxes
• to...Esther
• to Esther
• hand
• Queen
• King
• I have ordered my soldiers to hang
• everything that belonged to

ULT
7 And the king Ahasuerus said to Esther, the queen and to Mordecai the Jew, "Behold, I have given the house of Haman to Esther, and they have hanged him on the tree, on account of that he stretched out his hand against the Jews.

UST
7 King Xerxes replied to Queen Esther and Mordecai, "Because Haman tried to get rid of all the Jews, I have given to Esther everything that belonged to Haman, and I have ordered my soldiers to hang Haman."
Esther 8:8

Write...in the name of the king

Writing something in the king's name represents writing it with his authority, or writing it as his representative. (See: Metonymy)

For the decree...ring cannot be revoked

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "For no one can revoke the decree...ring" or "For no one can cancel the decree...ring" (See: Active or Passive)

For the decree...ring cannot be revoked

The information given between the words “decree” and “cannot” is the reason that the king cannot revoke Haman's decree. It can be shown clearly that it was the reason with the word “because.” Alternate translation: “For I cannot revoke the decree that has already been written, because it was written in the king's name and sealed with the king's ring” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

decree that has already been written in the king’s name

Writing something in the king's name represents writing it with his authority, or writing it as his representative. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Jews
- in the name of
- as is good
- and seal it
- and has been sealed
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- your people
- You may put...name on
- name on
- permitting
- and use...to seal them
- and which is sealed
- my

ULT
8 So you write for the Jews as is good in your eyes in the name of the king, and seal it with the signet ring of the king. For there is none to take back a writing that has been written in the name of the king and has been sealed with the signet ring of the king."

UST
8 So now I am also permitting you to write other letters, to save your people. You may put my name on the letters, and use my ring to seal them because no letter that has my name on it and which is sealed with my ring can ever be changed."
Esther 8:9

the king's scribes were called

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the king called his scribes.” The reader should understand that the king probably told an official to go and bring the scribes back with him. The king probably did not call out with a loud voice to get them to come. (See: Active or Passive and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the third month, which is the month of Sivan, on the twenty-third day of the month

“Sivan” is the name of the third month of the Hebrew calendar. The twenty-third day is near the middle of June on Western calendars. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers and How to Translate Names)

A decree was written

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “They wrote a decree” (See: Active or Passive)

127 provinces

“one hundred and twenty-seven provinces” (See: Numbers)

provinces

A province is a large area into which some countries are divided for the purposes of government. See how you translated this in Esther 1:1.

written in their own writing

“written in their own script.” There are different writing systems around the world.

Translation Words - ULT

• the scribes of
• commanded
• the Jews
• the Jews
• Mordecai
• Ethiopia
• and people
• by people
• the provinces
• provinces
• province
• by province
• according to its tongue

ULT

9 So the scribes of the king were called at that time, in the third month, which is the month of Sivan, on the twenty-third of it. And according to all that Mordecai commanded it was written to the Jews, and to the satraps, and the governors and officials of the provinces that were from India even as far as Ethiopia: 127 provinces, province by province according to its writing, and people by people according to their tongue, and to the Jews according to their writing and according to their tongue.

UST

9 Then the king summoned his secretaries, on June 25th, and Mordecai told them to write letters to the Jews and to all the governors and other officials in all of the 127 provinces, which extended from India in the east to Ethiopia in the west. They wrote these letters in all the languages that the people in each area spoke. They also wrote letters to the Jewish people, in their language.
and according to their tongue
the king
and officials of
and the governors

Translation Words - UST

his secretaries
told
the Jews
the Jewish people
Mordecai
Ethiopia in the west
that the people
that the people
and other officials
provinces
in each area
in each area
spoke
in their language
the king
and other officials
all the governors
Esther 8:10

wrote in the name of King Ahasuerus

Writing something in the king's name represents writing it with his authority, or writing it as his representative. (See: Metonymy)

signet ring

See how you translated this phrase in Esther 8:2

couriers

people who carry messages

bred from the royal stud

The royal stud was the king's best male horse. The horses that were used in the king's service were its offspring. Alternate translation: “the offspring of the king's best horse” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- sons of
- in the name of
- Ahasuerus
- by...hand of
- royal
- and he sealed
- the king
- the king
- on horses

Translation Words - UST

- bred in
- in the name of
- Ahasuerus
- by
- that were used in the king's service
- and sealed it
- King
- the king's
- couriers
Esther 8:11

gave to the Jews...permission to gather
“told the Jews...that he was allowing them to gather”

make a stand
This is a metaphor for fighting back and not running away. Alternate translation: “fight back” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• their life
• to the Jews
• a people
• to annihiliate
• and to destroy
• or province
• and to slaughter
• the king

Translation Words - UST

• their lives
• to the Jews
• belonging to any people group
• He allowed them to kill
• He allowed them to kill
• in any province
• He allowed them to kill
• The king
Esther 8:12

the thirteenth day of the twelfth month, which is the month of Adar

See how you translated this in Esther 3:13

Translation Words - ULT

- Ahasuerus
- the provinces of
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- Ahasuerus
- province, provincial
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT
12 on one day, in all of the provinces of the king Ahasuerus, on the thirteenth of the twelfth month, which is the month of Adar.

UST
12 All this was to be done on March 7th of the following year. Mordecai signed the king's name on the letters, and sealed them with the seal that was on the king's ring. Then he gave them to messengers, who rode on fast horses that had been raised especially for the king.
Esther 8:13

to take vengeance on their enemies

“To take vengeance on people” here is an idiom meaning to hurt people who have hurt you. Alternate translation: “to fight back against their enemies” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Jews
- from their enemies
- the peoples
- province
- by province
- as a law

Translation Words - UST

- Jew, Jewish
- on their enemies
- the people
- province
- province
- this law were to be nailed to posts

ULT

13 A copy of the writing was to be given as a law in every province by province, being uncovered for all the peoples, and for the Jews to be prepared for that day, to take revenge from their enemies.

UST

13 Copies of this law were to be nailed to posts in every province and read to all the people, in order that the Jews would be ready to get revenge on their enemies on March 7th.
Esther 8:14

They went without delay

“Without delay” here is an idiom meaning that they did not delay or wait. Alternate translation: “They went immediately” (See: Idiom)

Susa

This is the city where the king's palace was. See how you translated it in Esther 1:2. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• royal
• And the law
• the king
• the citadel

Translation Words - UST

• the king's
• And copies of the letter...also
• The king
• the capital city
Then Mordecai went out from before the face of the king in a garment of royalty of blue and white, with a great crown of gold and purple, and the city of Susa cheered and rejoiced.

Before Mordecai left the palace, he put on the blue and white robe and a large gold crown that the king gave him. He also put on a coat made of fine purple cloth. When the people in Susa heard the new law, they all shouted and rejoiced.
Esther 8:16

had light and gladness

Possible meanings are that 1) having light is a metaphor for being happy. Alternate translation: “were happy and glad” or 2) having light is metaphor for feeling prosperous and safe. Alternate translation: “felt safe and were glad” (See: Metaphor)

honor

Possible meanings are that 1) other people honored the Jews. Alternate translation: “other people honored them” or 2) the Jews felt honored. Alternate translation: “they felt honored” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• For the Jews
• and honor
• and joy
• and rejoicing

Translation Words - UST

• The Jews in Susa...them
• and other people honored
• very happy
• very happy
Esther 8:17

province
A province is a large area into which some countries are divided for the purposes of government. See how you translated this in Esther 1:1.

wherever the king's decree reached
Reaching places represents going to places. Alternate translation: “wherever the king's men took his decree” or “wherever the king's decree was read” (See: Metaphor)

holiday
day on which people celebrate special events

the fear of the Jews had fallen on them
Fear falling on people represents people becoming very afraid. Alternate translation: “they had become very afraid of the Jews” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT
  • dread of
  • for the Jews
  • became Jews
  • the Jews
  • good
  • from the peoples of
  • province
  • by province
  • and his law
  • a feast
  • there was joy
  • and rejoicing
  • the king
  • the word of

Translation Words - UST
  • afraid of
  • the Jews
  • were circumcised and became Jews
  • what the Jews would do...if they were not Jews
  • celebrated...and
  • people
  • province
  • province
  • the new law
  • and prepared feasts
  • were very joyful
were very joyful
• the new law
• the new law
Esther 9

Esther 9 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Purim

The events of this chapter were so significant, the Jews celebrated these events every year after this. It is known as “Purim.”

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Ironic Situation

The day that was supposed to bring great victory to the enemies of the Jews became a day of great victory for the Jews. This is a type of irony.
Esther 9:1

the twelfth month, which is the month of Adar, on the thirteenth day

See how you translated a similar phrase in Esther 3:13.

when the king's law and decree were about to be carried out

“Carry out” here is an idiom meaning to do something that was commanded or planned. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “when the people were about to obey the king's law and decree” (See: Idiom and Active or Passive)

to gain power over them

Gaining power over people is an idiom for defeating them. Alternate translation: “to defeat the Jews” (See: Idiom)

it was reversed

“the situation was reversed.” The situation being reversed is a metaphor meaning that the opposite of what was expected happened. Alternate translation: “the opposite happened” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• the Jews
• the Jews
• the enemies of
• and his law
• the king
• the word of

Translation Words - UST

• the Jews
• the Jews
• the enemies of
• The first law that
• their king
• had commanded
Esther 9:2

provinces
A province is a large area into which some countries are divided for the purposes of government. See how you translated this in Esther 1:1.

to lay hands on those who tried to bring disaster on them
Laying hands on people is a metonym for fighting against them. Alternate translation: “to fight their enemies” (See: Metonymy)

who tried to bring disaster on them
To bring disaster on people is an idiom meaning to cause a disaster to happen to them. In this case it refers to destroying them. Alternate translation: “who tried to destroy them” (See: Idiom)

No one could stand against them
Standing against people represents resisting their attack. Alternate translation: “No one could resist the attack of the Jews” or “No one could successfully fight against the Jews” (See: Metonymy)

the fear of them had fallen on all the peoples
Fear falling on people represents people becoming very afraid. Alternate translation: “all the peoples had become very afraid of the Jews” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT
- sudden fear of them
- The Jews
- their evil
- Ahasuerus
- a hand
- the peoples
- assembled themselves
- the provinces of
- to their face
- the king
- against those seeking

Translation Words - UST
- were afraid of the Jews
- the Jews
- get rid of them
- Throughout the empire
- to attack
• the other people in the areas where the Jews lived...so they did not want to help anyone who attacked the Jews
• gathered together
• Throughout the empire
• against the Jews
• Throughout the empire
• those who wanted to
Esther 9:3

provincial governors
“governors of the provinces”

the fear of Mordecai had fallen on them

Fear falling on people represents people becoming afraid. Alternate translation: “they had become afraid of Mordecai” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT
- dread of
- the Jews
- Mordecai
- the provinces
- was for the king
- the officials of
- and the governors

Translation Words - UST
- were afraid of
- Jews
- Mordecai
- the governors
- all the provinces
- the governors
- and other officials
Esther 9:4

was great in the king's house

“was very important in the king’s palace”

his fame spread throughout all the provinces

Fame spreading through places represents people in those places learning about how great he was. Alternate translation: “throughout the provinces people learned about how great he was” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• Mordecai
• in the palace of
• the provinces
• the king

Translation Words - UST

• Mordecai
• palace
• province, provincial
• king, kingdom, kingship
Esther 9:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Jews
- their enemies
- and destruction
- and slaughter
- of sword

Translation Words - UST

- the Jews
- their enemies
- and killed
- with their swords

ULT
5 And the Jews struck to all their enemies a strike of sword, and slaughter, and destruction; and they did to those who hated them according to their pleasure.

UST
5 On March 7th, the Jews attacked and killed with their swords all of their enemies. They did whatever they wanted to, to the people who hated them.
Esther 9:6

the fortress

This refers to a castle, stronghold or fortified city. See how you translated this in Esther 1:2.

Susa

This was a royal city of Persian kings. See how you translated this in Esther 1:2. (See: How to Translate Names)

five hundred men

“500 men” (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Jews
- and destroyed
- slaughtered
- the citadel

Translation Words - UST

- they
- destroy, destruction, annihilate
- killed
- the capital city

ULT
6 And in Susa the citadel the Jews slaughtered and destroyed five hundred men.

UST
6 Just in Susa, the capital city, they killed 500 people.
Esther 9:7

Parshandatha, Dalphon, Aspatha

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)
Poratha, Adalia, Aridatha

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)
Esther 9:9

Parmashta, Arisai, Aridai, Vaizatha

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

ULT
9 and Parmashta, and Arisai, and Aridai, and Vaizatha,

UST
9 Parmashta, Arisai, Aridai, and Vaizatha.
Esther 9:10

ten sons
“10 sons” (See: Numbers)

Haman

This is the name and description of Haman, one of the king’s officials. See how you translated this in Esther 3:1. (See: How to Translate Names)

Hammedatha

See how you translated this man’s name in Esther 3:1. (See: How to Translate Names)

the enemy of the Jews

This phrase tells us about Haman.

Translation Words - ULT

- the Jews
- the...sons of
- son of
- their hand
- the adversary of
- they slaughtered

Translation Words - UST

- the Jews
- and sons of
- grandsons
- take
- the enemy of
- The Jews killed them

ULT

10 the ten sons of Haman, son of Hammedatha, the adversary of the Jews, they slaughtered. But they did not stretch out their hand to the plunder.

UST

10 Those were grandsons of Hammedatha and sons of Haman, the enemy of the Jews. The Jews killed them, but they did not take the things that belonged to the people whom they killed.
Esther 9:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• to the face of
• the king
• the citadel

Translation Words - UST

• to
• the king
• in Susa

ULT

11 On that day, the report of the number of those who were killed in Susa the citadel came to the face of the king.

UST

11 At the end of that day someone reported to the king the number of people whom the Jews killed in Susa.
Esther 9:12

five hundred men
“500 men” (See: Numbers)

ten sons
“10 sons” (See: Numbers)

What then have they done in the rest of the king's provinces?
The king uses this question to show that he believes that the Jews must have also killed many people in the other provinces. Alternate translation: “What they must have done in the rest of the king's provinces!” or “They must have killed many more in the rest of the king's provinces!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

what is your petition?
The abstract noun “petition” can be expressed with the verb “ask for” or “want.” Alternate translation: “what do you ask for?” or “what do you want?” (See: Abstract Nouns)

It will be granted you
This can be expressed in active form. Alternate translation: “I will give you what you ask for” or “I will do for you what you ask” (See: Active or Passive)

What is your request?
The abstract noun “request” can be expressed with the verb “ask for” or “want.” Alternate translation: “What do you ask for?” or “What do you want?” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT
• the Jews
• the...sons of
• to Esther
• and destroyed
• the provinces of
• have slaughtered
• the queen
• the king
• the king
• the citadel

Translation Words - UST
• The Jews
• sons of
• to...Esther
• destroy, destruction, annihilate
empire
have killed
Queen
the king
my
here in Susa
Esther 9:13

to carry out this day’s decree tomorrow also

“Carry out” here is an idiom meaning to do something that was commanded or planned. Alternate translation: “to obey today’s decree tomorrow also” or “to do tomorrow also what was decreed that they should do today” (See: Idiom)

ten sons

“10 sons” (See: Numbers)

gallows

This was a structure used for killing people by tying one end of a rope around the top of the structure and the other end of the rope around their necks and hanging them from it. See how you translated this in Esther 2:23. Alternate translation: “a frame for hanging people” (See: Translate Unknowns)

Translation Words - ULT

• to the Jews
• the...sons of
• it is good
• Esther
• according to the law of
• the king
• let...hang

Translation Words - UST

• the Jews
• bodies of...sons
• it pleases
• Esther
• what you commanded them to do
• you
• be hanged
Esther 9:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the...sons of
- a law
- the king
- they hanged

Translation Words - UST

- bodies of...sons
- another order
- the king
- were hanged

ULT 14 And the king said for this to be done. And a law was given in Susa, and they hanged the ten sons of Haman.

UST 14 So the king commanded that the Jews be permitted to kill more of their enemies the next day. After he issued another order in Susa, the bodies of Haman's ten sons were hanged.
Esther 9:15

the fourteenth day of the month of Adar

See how you translated a similar phrase in Esther 3:13.

laid no hands on the plunder

Laying their hands on things represents taking them. Alternate translation: “took none of the plunder” or “did not take any of the plunder” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• the Jews
• their hand

Translation Words - UST

• Jew, Jewish
• they did...take away the things that belonged to the people whom they killed
Esther 9:16

seventy-five thousand

“75,000” (See: Numbers)

they did not lay their hands on the valuables of those they killed

Laying their hands on things represents taking them. Alternate translation: “they did not take any of the valuables of the people they killed” (See: Metonymy)

valuables

“valuable things” or “possessions”

Translation Words - ULT

• their lives
• the Jews
• their hand
• from their enemies
• assembled themselves
• were in the provinces of
• the king
• and they rested

Translation Words - UST

• themselves
• the Jewish people
• they did...take
• adversary, enemy
• gathered together
• In all the other provinces
• In all the other provinces
• rest, rested, restless

ULT
16 And the rest of the Jews who were in the provinces of the king assembled themselves and stood for their lives; and they rested from their enemies, and they slaughtered 75,000 of those who hated them. But they did not stretch out their hand to the plunder.

UST
16 That happened on March 8th. On the following day, the Jews in Susa rested and celebrated. In all the other provinces, the Jewish people gathered together to defend themselves, and they killed 75,000 people who hated them, but again they did not take the things that belonged to the people whom they killed.
Esther 9:17

the thirteenth day of the month of Adar

See how you translated a similar phrase in Esther 3:13.

On the fourteenth day they rested

“On the fourteenth day of Adar the Jews who were in the provinces rested”

Translation Words - ULT

• feasting
• and rejoicing
• then they rested

Translation Words - UST

• and celebrated
• and celebrated
• and...they rested

ULT
17 On the thirteenth day of the month of Adar: then they rested; on the fourteenth of it, then they made it a day of feasting and rejoicing.

UST
17 That occurred on March 7th, and on the following day they rested and celebrated.
Esther 9:18

the Jews who were in Susa assembled together

Why they assembled together can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “the Jews who were in Susa assembled together to fight against their enemies” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- But the Jews
- assembled themselves
- feasting
- and rejoicing
- And they rested

Translation Words - UST

- Jew, Jewish
- gathered together and killed their enemies
- and celebrated
- and celebrated
- they rested

ULT

18 But the Jews who were in Susa assembled themselves on the thirteenth of it and on the fourteenth of it. And they rested on the fifteenth of it, and they made it a day of feasting and rejoicing.

UST

18 After the Jews in Susa gathered together and killed their enemies on March 7th and 8th, they rested and celebrated on March 9th.
Esther 9:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Jews
- good
- and for feasting
- for rejoicing

Translation Words - UST

- the Jews who
- They have feasts
- They have feasts
- celebrate defeating their enemies

ULT

19 Therefore, the Jews, the ones of the open country, the ones who dwell in the cities of the open areas, make the fourteenth day of the month of Adar for rejoicing and for feasting and a good day; and for the sending of gifts, a man to his friend.

UST

19 That is why every year, on March 8th, the Jews who live in villages now celebrate defeating their enemies. They have feasts and give gifts of food to each other.
Esther 9:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - UST

- the Jews
- Mordecai
- Ahasuerus
- the provinces of
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- the Jews
- Mordecai
- Xerxes
- the empire of
- King
Esther 9:21

to keep the fourteenth and the fifteenth day of Adar every year

To keep a day is an idiom that means to celebrate it. Alternate translation: “to celebrate the fourteenth and fifteenth days of Adar every year” (See: Idiom)

ULT
21 to set up for them to be making the fourteenth day of the month of Adar and the fifteenth day of it, every year by year,

UST
21 He told them that every year they should celebrate on the 8th and 9th of March,
Esther 9:22

their sorrow turned to joy

Turning represents changing. The abstract nouns sorrow and joy can be expressed with “sad” and “joyful.” Alternate translation: “they changed from being very sad to being joyful” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Jews
- good
- from their enemies
- and from mourning
- feasting
- into joy
- and rejoicing
- rested

Translation Words - UST

- the Jews
- to celebrating
- of their enemies
- from crying
- by feasting
- to being very joyful
- by feasting
- got rid

ULT
22 as the days when the Jews rested on them from their enemies, and as the month when it had turned for them from sorrow into joy and from mourning into a good day, in order to make them days of feasting and rejoicing and sending of gifts, a man to his friend, and gifts to the needy.

UST
22 because those were the days when the Jews got rid of their enemies. He also told them that they should celebrate on those days by feasting and giving gifts of food to each other and to poor people. They would remember it as the month in which they changed from being very sorrowful to being very joyful, from crying to celebrating.
Esther 9:23

General Information:
This passage summarizes much of the story of Esther in order to explain the reason for the festival of Purim.

Translation Words - ULT
- the Jews
- Mordecai

Translation Words - UST
- the Jews...They
- Mordecai

ULT
23 And the Jews accepted what they had begun to do, and what Mordecai had written to them.

UST
23 So the Jews agreed to do what Mordecai wrote. They agreed to celebrate on those days every year.
Haman son of Hammedatha the Agagite

This is the name and description of Haman, one of the king's officials. See how you translated this in Esther 3:1. (See: How to Translate Names)

he threw Pur (that is, he threw lots)

“Pur” was the Persian word for “lot.” The phrase “he threw lots” explains what “he threw Pur” means.

he threw Pur (that is, he threw lots)

Why he threw Pur, or lots, can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “he threw Pur (that is, he threw lots) to find out what would be the best day to attack the Jews” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Jews
- the Jews
- the son of
- the adversary of
- to annihilate them
- and to destroy them
- the lot

Translation Words - UST

- the Jews
- the Jews
- son of
- an enemy of
- to kill
- to kill them
- lots to choose the day

ULT

24 For Haman, the son of Hammedatha the Agagite, the adversary of all the Jews, had plotted concerning the Jews to annihilate them; and he had cast a Pur (which is "the lot") to vex them and to destroy them.

UST

24 They would remember how Haman, son of Hammedatha, a descendant of King Agag, became an enemy of all the Jews. They would remember how he had made an evil plan to kill the Jews, and that he had cast lots to choose the day to kill them.
Esther 9:25

But when the matter came before the king

The Hebrew text can also be interpreted to mean, “But when Esther came before the king.” Some modern versions choose this interpretation.

the wicked plan Haman developed against the Jews should come back on his own head

“Come back on his own head” means that it should be done to Haman. Alternate translation: “the wicked plan Haman developed against the Jews should be done to him” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Jews
- his sons
- evil
- his head
- to the face of
- the king
- Let...and let them hang

Translation Words - UST

- the Jews
- his sons
- evil
- and that he would be killed
- the king
- the king
- and that...were hanged
Esther 9:26

they called these days Purim, after the name of Pur

To call something after something else is an idiom that means to give it the same name or a similar name. Alternate translation: “They called these days Purim, like the word Pur” (See: Idiom)

Purim

This is the name of the festival that commemorates the salvation of the Jewish people in ancient Persia from Haman’s plot to destroy and kill all the Jews in a single day. (See: How to Translate Names)

the name of Pur.

It can be stated clearly what “Pur” means. Alternate translation: “the word Pur, which means ‘lot.’” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- name of

Translation Words - UST

- called
Esther 9:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Jews
- their seed

Translation Words - UST

- the Jews throughout the empire
- their descendants

ULT
27 the Jews set up and accepted for themselves, and for their seed, and for all those who unite themselves to them (and it will not pass away) to be making these two days according to their writing, and according to their appointed time every year by year.

UST
27 the Jews throughout the empire agreed to celebrate in that manner on those two days every year. They said that they would tell their descendants and those people who became Jews to be certain to celebrate this festival every year. They should celebrate just as Mordecai told them to do in the letter that he wrote.
These days were to be celebrated and observed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The Jews were to celebrate and observe these days” (See: Active or Passive)

would never cease to faithfully observe

This can be stated positively. Alternate translation: “would always faithfully observe”

Translation Words - ULT

• will...come to an end
• the Jews
• family
• by family
• province
• by province
• from their seed
• generation
• by generation

Translation Words - UST

• perish
• they
• in each family
• in each family
• in every province
• in every province
• and their descendants
• year
• year

ULT

28 So these days are remembered and are made in every generation by generation, family by family, province by province, and city by city. And these days of Purim will not pass away from the midst of the Jews, and their remembrance will not come to an end from their seed.

UST

28 They said that they would remember and celebrate on those two days every year, in each family, in every city, and in every province. They solemnly declared that they and their descendants would never stop remembering and celebrating those days called Purim.
Esther 9:29

Queen Esther daughter of Abihail and Mordecai the Jew wrote...this second letter

Esther was the daughter of Abihail. Esther and Mordecai wrote the letter.

Abihail

Esther’s father and Mordecai’s uncle. See how you translated this in Esther 2:15. (See: How to Translate Names)

second letter

“additional letter” (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

• the Jew
• power
• and Mordecai
• Esther
• the queen

Translation Words - UST

• Mordecai and
• Esther used the authority that she had because of being the queen
• Mordecai and
• Esther, who was
• Queen
Esther 9:30

Letters were sent to all the Jews

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “They sent letters to all the Jews” (See: Active or Passive)

127 provinces

“one hundred and twenty-seven provinces” (See: Numbers)

wishing the Jews safety and truth

The abstract nouns “safety” and “truth” can be expressed with phrases. Alternate translation: “wishing that the Jews would be safe and that people would be faithful to the Jews” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

• the Jews
• and truth
• Ahasuerus
• provinces
• peace
• the kingdom of

Translation Words - UST

• the Jews
• and truth
• Ahasuerus
• provinces of
• peace
• the kingdom of
Esther 9:31

The Jews accepted this obligation for themselves and their descendants

Accepting an obligation is a metaphor for agreeing with the obligation. The abstract noun “obligation” can be expressed with the verb “obligate.” Alternate translation: “The Jews agreed and said that they and their descendants were obligated to celebrate the days of Purim” (See: Metaphor and Abstract Nouns)

they accepted times of fasting and lamenting

Accepting times of fasting and lamenting is a metaphor for agreeing to fast and lament at certain times. Alternate translation: “they agreed to fast and lament at certain times” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- lives...their
- the Jew
- Mordecai
- and Esther
- the queen
- seed...their
- their...and...outcry
- the fasts

Translation Words - UST

- themselves
- the Jew
- Mordecai
- and...Esther
- Queen
- their descendants
- and lamenting
- fasting
Esther 9:32

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• Esther
• And the decree of

Translation Words - UST

• Esther
• The letter that

ULT
32 And the decree of Esther set up these matters of Purim, and it was written in the scroll.

UST
32 The letter that Esther wrote about the manner in which they should celebrate the Purim feast was also written in an official record.
Esther 10

Esther 10 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Mordecai’s new position

Through the power of Yahweh, Mordecai was given a new position in the Persian Empire. Mordecai was now the second in command in the kingdom of Persia and he used his position to help other Jews.
imposed a tax on the land and on the coastlands along the sea

To impose a tax means to make people pay a tax. The land and coastlands represent the people living there. Alternate translation: “made the people living in the land and on the coastlands along the sea pay a tax” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT
- Ahasuerus
- a tribute
- the king

Translation Words - UST
- Ahasuerus
- pay taxes...to pay taxes
- King

ULT
1 Then the king Ahasuer set a tribute on the land and the islands of the sea.

UST
1 King Xerxes required that all the people in his empire pay taxes. Even the people who lived on the islands in the Mediterranean Sea were required to pay taxes.
All the achievements of his power and might

The abstract noun “achievements” can be expressed with the verb “achieve” or the phrase “do great things. The abstract nouns “power” and “might” can be translated with adjectives. Alternate translation: “All that he achieved because of how powerful and mighty he was” or “All the great things that he did because of his power and might” (See: Abstract Nouns)

the full account of the greatness of Mordecai to which the king had raised him

The king honoring Mordecai is spoken of as if the king physically raised him up. Alternate translation: “the full account of how the King had made it known that Mordecai was great” or “the full account of how the king had honored Mordecai for the great things he had done” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- his power
- Media
- Mordecai
- and Persia
- the king
- for the kings of

Translation Words - UST

- great
- Media
- by Mordecai
- and Persia
- the king
- by the kings of
Esther 10:3

second in rank to King Ahasuerus

“the most important person after King Ahasuerus”

Jewish brothers

The word brothers represents people who were like him. Alternate translation: “fellow Jews” (See: Metaphor)

he sought the welfare of his people

Seeking something is a metaphor for working hard for something. The abstract noun “welfare” can be translated as a phrase with the verb “prosper” or the adjective “secure.” Alternate translation: “He worked hard so his people would prosper” or “He worked hard so his people would be secure” (See: Metaphor and Abstract Nouns)

he spoke for the peace of all his people

“he represented his people so that they might have peace”

Translation Words - ULT

- the Jew
- among the Jews
- his brothers
- good
- Mordecai
- Ahasuerus
- for his people
- to the King
- peace
- seeking

Translation Words - UST

- who was a Jew
- all the Jews
- They
- many good things
- Mordecai
- the king’s
- for the Jews
- the king’s
- good things
- because he did
Abstract Nouns

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract Nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people who speak these languages can talk about them as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, “I believe in the forgiveness of sin.” But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, they may not have the two abstract nouns “forgiveness” and “sin,” but they would express the same meaning in other ways. They would say, for example, “I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned,” using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, “What is its weight?” could be expressed as “How much does it weigh?” or “How heavy is it?”

Examples from the Bible

...from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

The abstract noun “childhood” refers to when someone is a child.

But godliness with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.
Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

...from childhood
you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

Ever since you were a child you have known the sacred writings.

But godliness
with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But being godly and content is very beneficial.
But we benefit greatly when we are godly and content.
But we benefit greatly when we honor and obey God and when we are happy with what we have.

Today salvation
has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house have been saved...
Today God has saved the people in this house...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness
to be. (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider moving slowly to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes
of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them.

(Go back to: Esther 5:6; 5:11; 7:2; 7:3; 7:7; 9:12; 9:30; 9:31; 10:2; 10:3)
Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- **ACTIVE**: *My father* built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE**: *The house* was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- **ACTIVE**: *My father* built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE**: *The house* was built by my father in 2010.
- **PASSIVE**: *The house* was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons this is a translation issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

Purposes for the passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

- And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants *were killed*, and your servant Uriah the Hittite *was killed*, too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)
This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal was broken down... (Judges 6:28 ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea. (Luke 17:2 ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like “they” or “people” or “someone.”
3. Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like “they” or “people” or “someone.”

It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea. (Luke 17:2 ULT)

It would be better for him if they were to put a millstone around his neck and throw him into the sea.

It would be better for him if someone were to put a heavy stone around his neck and throw him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He received a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.
Next we recommend you learn about:

Abstract Nouns
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

- **Assumed knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

- When **the speaker does give the audience information**, he can do so in two ways:
  - **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
  - **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. **Implicit information** is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this **implicit information** by combining what they already know (**assumed knowledge**) with the **explicit information** that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons this is a translation issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the **assumed knowledge** or the **implicit information** is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, “Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go.” Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here “I am the Son of Man” but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But
it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all assumed knowledge.

An important piece of implicit information here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged because they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was assumed knowledge that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is implicit information that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:20 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes to live in, and the birds of the sky have nests to live in, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep.”

...it will be more tolerable for those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked, at the day of judgment than for you.

or:

...it will be more tolerable for those wicked cities Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands
when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness when they eat.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, “Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go.” Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULT) - The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.

Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.”

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will punish Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked, less severely than he will punish you.

or:

At the day of judgment, God will punish you more severely than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about: [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]

(Go back to: Esther 1:15; 2:14; 2:18; Notes; 4:16; Notes; 6:4; Notes; 7:8; 8:3; 8:8; 8:9; 8:10; 8:16; 9:18; 9:24; 9:26)
Background Information

Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called background information. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

Example - The underlined sentences in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because their village was going to have a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day! They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope they had brought with them, and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter’s cousin saw the pig and realized that it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin’s pig.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: “their village was going to have a feast the next day;” “He once killed three wild pigs in one day;” “that they had brought with them;” and “Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin’s pig.”

Often background information uses “be” verbs like “was” and “were”, rather than action verbs. Examples of these are “Peter was the best hunter in the village” and “it was his own pig.”

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are “because,” “once,” and “had.”

A writer may use background information

- To help their listeners be interested in the story
- To help their listeners understand something in the story
- To help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- To tell the setting of a story
- Setting includes:
  - where the story takes place
  - when the story takes place
  - who is present when the story begins
  - what is happening when the story begins

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
Examples from the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram’s son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus’ age and ancestors. The story starts up again in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Now it happened on a Sabbath that Jesus was going through the grain fields and his disciples were picking the heads of grain, rubbing them between their hands, and eating the grain. But some of the Pharisees said... (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus’ disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the sentence, “But some of the Pharisees said.”

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kind of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

1. Use your language’s way of showing that certain information is background information.
2. Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language’s way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

Now

Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

English uses the word “now” to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb “was” shows that it is background information.

With many other exhortations also, he preached good news to the people. John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother’s wife, Herodias, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The underlined phrases happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb “had” in “had done” shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.
Hagar gave birth to Abram’s son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

“When Abram was eighty-six years old, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael.”

John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother’s wife, Herodias, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20)

The translation below reorders John’s rebuke and Herod’s actions.

“Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother’s wife, Herodias, and he did many other evil things, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.”

(Next we recommend you learn about: [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/grammar-connect-words-phrases]] Introduction of a New Event)

(Go back to: Esther 1:1; 1:10; 1:13; 2:6; 2:7; 2:12; 2:14)
Biblical Distance

Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man’s hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man’s hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man’s forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The “**long**” **cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**), referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as “furlong”, which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Original Measure</th>
<th>Metric Measure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>handbreadth</td>
<td>8 centimeters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>span</td>
<td>23 centimeters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cubit</td>
<td>46 centimeters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“long” cubit</td>
<td>54 centimeters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stadium</td>
<td>185 meters</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as “.46 meters” or even as “46 centimeters”, readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a meter”, “45 centimeters”, or “50 centimeters”.
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was sixty stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as “about ten kilometers” from Jerusalem.
6. When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.
Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half. (Exodus 25:10 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements given in the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half kubits; its width will be one kubit and a half; and its height will be one kubit and a half.”

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be one meter; its width will be two thirds of a meter; and its height will be two thirds of a meter.”

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard meter length, you could translate it as below.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be one meter; its width will be two thirds of a meter; and its height will be two thirds of a meter.”

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits (one meter); its width will be one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter); and its height will be one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter).”

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.
“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be one meter ¹; its width will be two thirds of a meter ²; and its height will be two thirds of a meter.”

The footnotes would look like:

[¹] two and a half cubits
[²] one cubit and a half

(Go back to: Esther 5:14; 7:9)
Biblical Money

Description:

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals such as silver and gold and would give a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit in OT</th>
<th>Metal</th>
<th>Weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>daric</td>
<td>gold coin</td>
<td>8.4 grams</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shekel</td>
<td>various metals</td>
<td>11 grams</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talent</td>
<td>various metals</td>
<td>33 kilograms</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit in NT</th>
<th>Metal</th>
<th>Day's Wage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>denarius/denarii</td>
<td>silver coin</td>
<td>1 day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drachma</td>
<td>silver coin</td>
<td>1 day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mite</td>
<td>copper coin</td>
<td>1/64 day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shekel</td>
<td>silver coin</td>
<td>4 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talent</td>
<td>silver</td>
<td>6,000 days</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see Biblical Weight. The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament.

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a note.
5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a note.

Translation Strategies

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.
The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii. (Luke 7:41 ULT)

(1) Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

“The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii.”

(2) Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

“The one owed five hundred silver coins, and the other owed fifty silver coins.”

(3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

“The one owed five hundred days’ wages, and the other owed fifty days’ wages.”

(4) Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

“The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii.”

The footnotes would look like:

[1] five hundred days’ wages
[2] fifty day’s wages

(5) Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

“The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii.”

(Luke 7:41 ULT)

[1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]]

Translate Unknowns

(Go back to: Esther 3:9)
Doublet

Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples from the Bible

- **King David was old and advanced in years.** (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)
  - The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean that he was “very old.”
  - ...he attacked two men more righteous and better than himself... (1 Kings 2:32 ULT)
  - This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

- **You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words** (Daniel 2:9 ULT)
  - This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

- **...as of a lamb without blemish and without spot.** (1 Peter 1:19 ULT)
  - This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect—not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words or phrases.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

- **You have decided to prepare false**
  - and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)
  - “You have decided to prepare false things to say.”
(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

- King David was old

and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

- “King David was very old.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

- ...a lamb without blemish

and without spot... (1 Peter 1:19 ULT) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

- ...a lamb without any blemish at all...

(Go back to: Esther 1:4; 2:9; 2:17; 3:13; 5:7; 7:4)
Euphemism

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

Definition

...they found Saul and his sons fell on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead”. It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples from the Bible

...where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself...(1 Samuel 24:3 ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracted them, so he did not say specifically what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order to be polite, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

...where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself

(1 Samuel 24:3 ULT) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

“...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to dig a hole “
“...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to have some time alone “

Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?” (Luke 1:34 ULT)
Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I do not know a man?” - (This is the euphemism used in the original Greek)

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULT)

“they found Saul and his sons dead on Mount Gilboa.”

(Go back to: Esther 7:8)
First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you”. Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you”.

Description

- **First person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we”. (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- **Second person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you”. (Also: your, yours)
- **Third person** - This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he”, “she”, “it” and “they”. (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

Reason this is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you”.

Examples from the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

- But David said to Saul, “Your servant used to keep his father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and “his”. He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

- Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “...Do you have an arm like God’s? Can you thunder with a voice like him?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “him”. He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

- Abraham answered and said, “Look what I have done, taking it upon myself to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes!” (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you”. He did this to show his humility before God.

- So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive his brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your”.

This page answers the question: What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- [rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]
- [rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns]
Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you”.
2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you”.

But David said to Saul, “Your servant used to keep his father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)

But David said to Saul, “I, your servant, used to keep my father’s sheep.”

(2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like God’s?

? Can you thunder with a voice like him? (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like mine?

Can you thunder with a voice like me?”

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive his brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive your brother from your heart.

(Go back to: Esther 1:19; 1:20; 2:2; 2:3; 2:4; 3:8; 5:4; 5:8; 6:6)
# Hebrew Months

## Description

The Hebrew calendar used in the Bible has twelve months. Unlike the western calendar, its first month begins in the spring of the northern hemisphere. Sometimes a month is called by its name (Abib, Ziv, Sivan), and sometimes it is called by its order in the Hebrew calendar year (first month, second month, third month).

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may be surprised to read of months that they have never heard of, and they may wonder how those months correspond to the months that they use.
- Readers may not realize that phrases such as “the first month” or “the second month” refer to the first or second month of the Hebrew calendar, not some other calendar.
- Readers may not know when the first month of the Hebrew calendar begins.
- The Bible may tell about something happening in a certain month, but readers will not be able to fully understand what is said about it if they do not know what season of the year that was.

## List of Hebrew Months

This is a list of the Hebrew months with information about them that may be helpful in the translation.

**Abib** - (This month is called Nisan after the Babylonian exile.) This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come and people begin to harvest their crops. It is during the last part of March and the first part of April on western calendars. The Passover celebration started on Abib 10, the Festival of Unleavened Bread was right after that, and the Festival of Harvest was a few weeks after that.

**Ziv** - This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the harvest season. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on western calendars.

**Sivan** - This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on western calendars. The Feast of Weeks is celebrated on Sivan 6.

**Tammuz** - This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on western calendars.

**Ab** - This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on western calendars.

**Elul** - This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the dry season and the beginning of the rainy season. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on western calendars.

**Ethanim** - This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on western calendars. The Feast of Ingathering and the Day of Atonement are celebrated in this month.

**Bul** - This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the rainy season when people plough their fields and sow seed. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on western calendars.

**Kislev** - This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. This is at the end of the sowing season and the beginning of the cold season. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on western calendars.
Tebeth - This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on western calendars.

Shebat - This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is the coldest month of the year, and it has heavy rain fall. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on western calendars.

Adar - This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the cold season. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on western calendars. The feast called Purim is celebrated in Adar.

Examples from the Bible

- You are going out of Egypt on this day, in the month of Abib. (Exodus 13:4 ULT)
- You must eat unleavened bread from twilight of the fourteenth day in the first month of the year, until twilight of the twenty-first day of the month. (Exodus 12:18 ULT)

Translation Strategies

You may need to make some information about the months explicit. (See Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information.)

1. Tell the number of the Hebrew month.
2. Use the months that people know.
3. State clearly what season the month occurred in.
4. Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month. (If possible, use a footnote to show the Hebrew month and day.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The examples below use these two verses.

- At that time, you will appear before me in the month of Abib, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt. (Exodus 23:15 ULT)

It will always be a statute for you that in the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month,

you must humble yourselves and do no work. (Leviticus 16:29 ULT)

(1) Tell the number of the Hebrew month.

At that time, you will appear before me in the first month of the year, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

(2) Use the months that people know.

At that time, you will appear before me in the month of March, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

It will always be a statute for you that on the day I choose in late September you must humble yourselves and do no work.”

(3) State clearly what season the month occurred in.

It will always be a statute for you that in the autumn, on the tenth day of the seventh month, you must humble yourselves and do no work.

(4) Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month.
It will always be a statute for you that in the day I choose in early autumn you must humble yourselves and do no work.

[1] The Hebrew says, “the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month.”

(Go back to: Esther 2:16; 3:7; 3:12; 3:13; 8:9)
Hendiadys

Description

When a speaker expresses a single idea by using two words that are connected with “and,” it is called “hendiadys.” In hendiadys, the two words work together. Usually one of the words is the primary idea and the other word further describes the primary one.

...his own kingdom and glory. (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULT)

Though “kingdom” and “glory” are both nouns, “glory” actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a kingdom of glory or a glorious kingdom.

Two phrases connected by “and” can also be a hendiadys when they refer to a single person, thing, or event.

while we look forward to receiving the blessed hope and appearing of the glory of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ. (Titus 2:13 ULT)

Titus 2:13 contains two hendiadys. “The blessed hope” and “appearing of the glory” refer to the same thing and serve to strengthen the idea that the return of Jesus Christ is greatly anticipated and wonderful. Also, “our great God” and “Savior Jesus Christ” refer to one person, not two.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Often hendiadys contains an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Many languages do not use hendiadys, so people may not understand that the second word is further describing the first one.
- Many languages do not use hendiadys, so people may not understand that only one person or thing is meant, not two.

Examples from the Bible

...for I will give you words and wisdom... (Luke 21:15 ULT)

“Words” and “wisdom” are nouns, but in this figure of speech “wisdom” describes “words.”

...if you are willing and obedient...(Isaiah 1:19 ULT)

“Willing” and “obedient” are adjectives, but “willing” describes “obedient.”

Translation Strategies

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
2. Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
3. Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.
4. Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.
5. If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.
Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.

for I will give you **words and wisdom**

(Luke 21:15 ULT)

for I will give you **wise words**

that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own kingdom and glory

(1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULT)

that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own glorious kingdom.

(2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.

for I will give you **words of wisdom**.

(Luke 21:15 ULT)

for I will give you words of wisdom.

that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own kingdom and glory

(1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULT)

that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own kingdom of glory.

(3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

if you are willing

and obedient (Isaiah 1:19 ULT)

if you are willingly obedient

(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.

if you are willing and obedient

(Isaiah 1:19 ULT)

The adjective “obedient” can be substituted with the verb “obey.”

if you obey willingly

(4) and (5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

while we look forward to receiving the blessed hope and appearing of the glory of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ. (Titus 2:13 ULT)

The noun “glory” can be changed to the adjective “glorious” to make it clear that Jesus’ appearing is what we hope for. Also, “Jesus Christ” can be moved to the front of the phrase and “great God and Savior” put into a relative clause that describes the one person, Jesus Christ.
while we look forward to receiving what we are longing for, the blessed and glorious appearing of Jesus Christ, who is our great God and Savior.

(Go back to: Esther 8:15)
How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this Melchizedek, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2 ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me”.

She named him Moses and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)
Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out”.

*Saul* was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that *Paul* and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

**Translation Strategies**

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

```
You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULT)
```

```
You went over the Jordan River and came to the city of Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the tribe of the Amorites
```

Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because Herod wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

```
Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because King Herod wants to kill you.
```

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

```
She named him Moses and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)
```

```
She named him Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’), and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”
```

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

```
...she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi
```
...she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Well of the Living One who sees me*;

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

...a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

The footnote would look like:

[1] Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

The footnote would look like:

[1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

The footnote would look like:
[1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.
Hyperbole

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

- It rains here every night.
  1. The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
  2. The speaker means this as a generalization if he means that it rains here most nights.
  3. The speaker means this as a hyperbole if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

**Hyperbole:** This is a figure of speech that uses exaggeration. A speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

- They will not leave one stone upon another (Luke 19:44 ULT)
- This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.
- Moses was educated in all the learning of the Egyptians (Acts 7:22 ULT)
- This hyperbole means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught, and thus was as educated as any Egyptian.

**Generalization:** This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

- The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame, but honor will come to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)
- These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.
- And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7)
- This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” it does not necessarily mean exactly “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never.” It simply means “most,” “most of the time,” “hardly any,” or “rarely.”

**Reason this is a translation issue**

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)
Examples from the Bible

Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, cut it off. It is better for you to enter into life maimed...
(Mark 9:43 ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should do whatever extreme things we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expression the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were many, many soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you about all things and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about all things that we need to know. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

They found him, and they said to him, “Everyone is looking for you.” (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that many people were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

Examples of Generalization

Can anything good come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46 ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, “Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies.” (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

A lazy hand causes poverty, but the hand of the diligent makes him rich. (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

Caution

Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

...they saw Jesus walking on the sea and coming near the boat... (John 6:19 ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

Do not assume that the word “all” is always a generalization that means “most.”
The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore.

(1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame...

(Proverbs 13:18 ULT)

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.

(Matthew 6:7)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
3. For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
4. For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore.

(1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame...

(Proverbs 13:18 ULT)

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.

(Matthew 6:7)

2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases”.

In general, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame.

3. For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

Almost all the country of Judea and almost all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

4. For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

Almost all the country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.
The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(Go back to: Esther 1:16; 1:17)
Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are telling me a lie.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

**Description**

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

- I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

The phrase “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house”.

- Let these words go deeply into your ears. (Luke 9:44 ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say”.

**Purpose:** An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

**Reasons this is a translation issue**

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

**Examples from the Bible**

- Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

- the children of Israel went out with a high hand. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)
This means, “The Israelites went out defiantly.”

the one who *lifts up my head* (Psalm 3:3 ULT)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

**Translation Strategies**

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

...Look, we all belong to the same nation.

He resolutely set his face
to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.

I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

I am not worthy that you should enter my house.

(2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Let these words go deeply into your ears (Luke 9:44 ULT)

Be all ears when I say these words to you.

“My eyes grow dim
from grief (Psalm 6:7 ULT)

I am crying my eyes out

Introduction of a New Event

Description

When people tell a story, they tell about an event or a series of events. Often they put certain information at the beginning of the story, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. This information that the writer gives before the events of the story begin is called the setting of the story. Some new events in a story also have a setting because they might involve new people, new times, and new places. In some languages people also tell if they saw the event or heard about it from someone else.

When your people tell about events, what information do they give at the beginning? Is there a certain order that they put it in? In your translation, you will need to follow the way your language introduces new information at the beginning of a story or a new event rather than the way the source language did that. In this way your translation will sound natural and communicate clearly in your language.

Examples from the Bible

_In the days of Herod_, king of Judea, _there was a certain priest named Zechariah_, from the division of Abijah. _His wife was_ from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (Luke 1:5 ULT)

The verses above introduce a story about Zechariah. The first underlined phrase tells when it happened, and the next two underlined phrases introduce the main people. The next two verses go on to explain that Zechariah and Elizabeth were old and did not have any children. All of this is the setting. Then the phrase “One day” in Luke 1:8 helps to introduce the first event in this story:

_One day_ while Zechariah was performing his duties as a priest before God in the order of his division, the priests followed their custom and chose him by lot to enter the temple of the Lord and burn incense. (Luke 1:8-9 ULT)

The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way. His mother Mary was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18 ULT)

The underlined sentence above makes it explicit that a story about Jesus is being introduced. The story will tell about how the birth of Jesus happened.

_After Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king_, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem saying,... (Matthew 2:1 ULT)

The underlined phrase above shows that the events concerning the learned men happened _after_ Jesus was born.

_In those days_ John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea saying,... (Matthew 3:1-22 ULT)

The underlined phrase above shows that John the Baptist came preaching around the time of the previous events. It is probably very general and refers to when Jesus lived in Nazareth.

_Then_ Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to be baptized by John. (Matthew 3:13 ULT)

The word “then” shows that Jesus came to the Jordan River some time after the events in the previous verses.

_Now there was a Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish Council_. This man came to Jesus at night time (John 3:1-2 ULT)
The author first introduced the new person and then told about what he did and when he did it. In some languages it might be more natural to tell about the time first.

6 Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. 7 Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons’ wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Verse 6 is a summary of the events that happen in the rest of chapter 7. Chapter 6 already told about how God told Noah that there would be a flood, and how Noah prepared for it. Chapter 7 verse 6 introduces the part of the story that tells about Noah and his family and the animals going into the ship, the rain starting, and the rain flooding the earth. Some languages might need to make it clear that this verse simply introduces the event, or move this verse after verse 7. Verse 6 is not one of the events of the story. The people went into the ship before the flood came.

Translation Strategies

If the information given at the beginning of a new event is clear and natural to your readers, consider translating it as it is in the ULT or UST. If not, consider one of these strategies.

1. Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
2. If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase to fill in that information, such as: “another time” or “someone.”
3. If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language’s way of showing that it is a summary.
4. If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event would actually happen later in the story.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.

Now there was a Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish Council. This man came to Jesus at night time and said to him... (John 3:1,2)

There was a man whose name was Nicodemus. He was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council. One night he came to Jesus and said...

One night a man named Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council, came to Jesus and said...

As he passed by, he saw Levi the son of Alpheus, who was sitting at the tax collecting place, and he said to him... (Mark 2:14 ULT)

As he passed by, Levi the son of Alpheus was sitting at the tax collecting place. Jesus saw him and said...

As he passed by, there was a man sitting at the tax collecting place. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him...

As he passed by, there was a tax collector sitting at the tax collecting place. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him...

(2) If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as: another time, someone.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT) - If people expect to be told something about when the new event happened, the phrase “after that” can help them see that it happened after the events already mentioned.
After that, when Noah was six hundred years old, the flood came upon the earth.

Again he began to teach beside the lake. (Mark 4:1 ULT) - In chapter 3 Jesus was teaching at someone's house. Readers may need to be told that this new event happened at another time, or that Jesus actually went to the lake.

Another time Jesus began to teach people again beside the lake. Jesus went to the lake and began to teach people again there.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT)

Now this is what happened when Noah was six hundred years old and the flood came upon the earth.

This part tells about what happened when the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was six hundred years old.

(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event will actually happen later in the story.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Now this is what happened when Noah was six hundred years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because God had said that the waters of the flood would come.

(Next we recommend you learn about:)

Background Information
Introduction of New and Old Participants

(Go back to: Esther 2:1; 2:15; 2:21; 3:1)
Introduction of New and Old Participants

Description

The first time that people or things are mentioned in a story, they are **new participants**. After that, whenever they are mentioned, they are **old participants**.

Now *there was a Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus...This man* came to Jesus at night time...
Jesus replied to *him* (John 3:1)

The first underlined phrase introduces Nicodemus as a new participant. He is then referred to as “This man” and “him” when he is an old participant.

Reason this is a translation issue

In order to make your translation clear and natural, it is necessary to refer to the participants in such a way that people will know if they are new participants or participants that they have already read about. Different languages have different ways of doing this. You must follow the way that your language does this, not the way that the source language does this.

Examples from the Bible

**New Participants**

Often the most important new participant is introduced with a phrase that says that he existed, such as “There was a man” in the example below. The phrase “There was” tells us that this man existed. The word “a” in “a man” tells us that the author is speaking about him for the first time. The rest of the sentence tells where this man was from, who is family was, and what his name was.

*There was a man* from Zorah, of the family of the Danites, whose name was Manoah. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

A new participant who is not the most important one is often introduced in relation to the more important person who was already introduced. In the example below, Manoah's wife is simply referred to as “his wife”. This phrase shows her relationship to him.

*There was a man* from Zorah, of the family of the Danites, whose name was Manoah. **His wife**
was not able to become pregnant and so she had not given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Sometimes a new participant is introduced simply by name because the author assumes that the readers know who the person is. In the first verse of 1 Kings, the author assumes that his readers know who King David is, so there is no need to explain who he is.

*When King David was very old,* they covered him with blankets, but he could not keep warm. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

**Old Participants**

A person who has already been brought into the story can be referred to with a pronoun after that. In the example below, Manoah is referred to with the pronoun “his”, and his wife is referred to with the pronoun “she”.

**His** wife was not able to become pregnant and so **she** had not given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)
Old participants can also be referred to in other ways, depending on what is happening in the story. In the example below, the story is about bearing a son, and Manoah's wife is referred to with the noun phrase “the woman”.

The angel of Yahweh appeared to the woman and said to her, (Judges 13:3 ULT)

If the old participant has not been mentioned for a while, or if there could be confusion between participants, the author may use the participant's name again. In the example below, Manoah is referred to with his name, which the author has not used since verse 2.

Then Manoah prayed to Yahweh... (Judges 13:8 ULT)

Some languages place an affix on the verb that tells something about the subject. In some of those languages people do not always use noun phrases or pronouns for old participants when they are the subject of the sentence. The marker on the verb gives enough information for the listener to understand who the subject is. (See Verbs.)

Translation Strategies

1. If the participant is new, use one of your language's ways of introducing new participants.
2. If it is not clear to whom a pronoun refers, use a noun phrase or name.
3. If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the participant is new, use one of your language's ways of introducing new participants.

Joseph, a Levite, a man from Cyprus, was given the name Barnabas by the apostles (that is, being interpreted, Son of encouragement). (Acts 4:36-37 ULT) - Starting the sentence with Joseph's name when he has not been introduced yet might be confusing in some languages.

There was a man from Cyprus who was a Levite. His name was Joseph, and he was given the name Barnabas by the apostles (that is, being interpreted, Son of encouragement).

There was a Levite from Cyprus whose name was Joseph. The apostles gave him the name Barnabas, which means Son of encouragement.

(2) If it is not clear who a pronoun refers to, use a noun phrase or name.

It happened when he

finished praying in a certain place, that one of his disciples said, “Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples.” (Luke 11:1 ULT) - Since this is the first verse in a chapter, readers might wonder who “he” refers to.

It happened when Jesus finished praying in a certain place, that one of his disciples said, “Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples.

(3) If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

Joseph's

master took Joseph and put him in prison, in the place where all the king's prisoners were put, and Joseph stayed there. (Genesis 39:20 ULT) - Since Joseph is the main person in the story, some languages might find it unnatural or confusing to use his name so much. They might prefer a pronoun.

Joseph's master took him and put him in prison, in the place where all the king's prisoners were put, and he stayed there in the prison.
Next we recommend you learn about:
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-pronouns]]

(Go back to: Esther 2:5)
Merism

Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

“I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8, ULT)

“I am the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End.” (Revelation 22:13, ULT)

Alpha and Omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth... (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples from the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere”.

He will bless those who honor him, both young and old. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of, old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone”.

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth

... (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of everything...
From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

In all places, people should praise Yahweh’s name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth.

I praise you, Father, Lord of everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth.

He will bless those who honor him, both young and old.

He will bless all those who honor him, regardless of whether they are young or old.

(Go back to: Esther 1:20)
Metaphor

Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say:

- The girl I love is a red rose.

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer's task is to understand in what way they are alike.

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about "the girl I love". This is the Topic. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and "a red rose." The red rose is the Image to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the Idea that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the Point of Comparison.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The Topic, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The Image, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The Idea, the abstract concept or quality that the physical Image brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the Image and the Topic are similar. Often, the Idea of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the Idea himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical Image to apply an abstract Idea to the speaker's Topic.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a Topic, with at least one Point of Comparison (Idea) between the Topic and the Image. Often in metaphors, the Topic and the Image are explicitly stated, but the Idea is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the Topic and the Image and to figure out for themselves the Idea that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a "passive" metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being "active." Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these "dead metaphors." Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms “table leg”, “family tree”, “book leaf” (meaning a page in
a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

**Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors**

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP (the Image) often represents the concepts of MORE or BETTER (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going up,” “A highly intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going down,” and “I am feeling very low.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world's languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat up.” MORE is spoken of as UP.
- “Let us go ahead with our debate.” DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- “You defend your theory well.” ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- “A flow of words” WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

**Active Metaphors**

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. They make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

> For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.  
> (Malachi 4:2 ULT)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun's rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

> Jesus said, “Go and tell that fox...,” (Luke 13:32 ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors are the metaphors that need special care to translate correctly. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.
Jesus said to them, “I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty.” (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The Topic is “I” (meaning Jesus himself) and the Image is “bread.” Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The Idea of the metaphor is “life.” In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

**Purposes of Metaphor**

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the Topic) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the Image).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the Topic) has a particular quality (the Idea) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the Topic as they would feel about the Image.

**Reasons this is a translation issue**

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

**Translation Principles**

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

**Examples from the Bible**

Listen to this word, *you cows of Bashan*, (Amos 4:1 ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria (“you”, the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshipped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; *we are the clay. You are our potter,* and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are “we” and “you,” and the Image(s) are “clay” and “potter.” The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter’s clay and “us” is that neither the clay nor God’s people have a right to complain about what they are becoming.
Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

**Translation Strategies**

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally *if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible*. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See Simile.
4. If the target audience would not know the Image, see *Translate Unknowns* for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that Image for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the Topic is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the Idea) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the Idea plainly without using a metaphor.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet.

. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally *if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible*. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

It was because of your *hard hearts* that he wrote you this law, (Mark 10:5 ULT)
We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands
this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some
languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay
. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are like clay. You are like a potter; and we all are the
work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the Image, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that
image.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad
. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick.

(5) If the target audience would not use that Image for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead.
Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay
. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

“And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the wood. You are our carver; and we all are the
work of your hand.”

“And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the string. You are the weaver; and we all are the
work of your hand.”

(6) If the target audience would not know what the Topic is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if
the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

Yahweh lives; may my rock
be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; He is my rock. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it
clearly.

Yahweh lives; may my rock
be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock under which I can hide from my
enemies. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad
. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that
kicks against its owner’s pointed stick.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.
I will make you become fishers of men

. (Mark 1:17 ULT)

I will make you become people who gather men.
Now you gather fish. I will make you gather people.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns.

(Go back to: Esther 1:12; 3:5; 5:2; 5:8; 5:9; 5:10; 5:11; 6:2; 6:6; 6:13; 7:3; 7:4; 7:7; 7:10; 8:5; 8:11; 8:16; 8:17; 9:1; 9:2; 9:3; 9:4; 9:22; 9:31; 10:2; 10:3)
Metonymy

**Description**

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

- and the blood of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

- He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

**Metonymy can be used**

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

**Reason this is a translation issue**

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

**Examples from the Bible**

- The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. “Throne” is a metonym for “kingly authority,” “kingship,” or “reign.” This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

- Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

- ...who warned you to flee from the wrath that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

The word “wrath” or “anger” is a metonym for “punishment.” God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

**Translation Strategies**

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.
Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

“He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “The wine in this cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

“The Lord God will give him the kingly authority of his father, David.”
or:
“The Lord God will make him king like his ancestor, King David.”

who warned you to flee from the wrath to come? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

“who warned you to flee from God’s coming punishment?”

To learn about some common metonyms, see Biblical Imagery - Common Metonyms.

(Go back to: Esther 1:2; 3:12; 7:8; 8:5; 8:8; 8:10; 8:15; 9:2; 9:15; 9:16; 10:1)
Numbers

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words (“five”) or as numerals (“5”). Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000), or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

- Abram was **eighty-six** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)
- Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

- That day about **three thousand** men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULT)
- Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples from the Bible

- When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **eight hundred** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)
- The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

- Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands** (Genesis 24:60 ULT)
- This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language’s words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.
Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, 1,000,000 talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand (100,000) talents of gold, one million (1,000,000) talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand talents of gold, a thousand talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents), and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULT and UST

The unfoldingWord® Literal Text (ULT) and the unfoldingWord® Simplified Text (UST) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals “130” instead of “one hundred thirty”).

When Adam had lived 130 years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived eight hundred years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived 930 years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)
Next we recommend you learn about:

**Ordinal Numbers**
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

Ordinal Numbers

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church first apostles, second prophets, third teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULT)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Numeral</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Ordinal Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>four</td>
<td>fourth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>ten</td>
<td>tenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>one hundred</td>
<td>one hundredth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,000</td>
<td>one thousand</td>
<td>one thousandth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Numeral</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Ordinal Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>one</td>
<td>first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>two</td>
<td>second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>three</td>
<td>third</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>five</td>
<td>fifth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>twelve</td>
<td>twelfth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reason this is a translation issue:

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples from the Bible

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The first row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The second row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The third row
must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The \textbf{fourth} row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

\textbf{Translation Strategies}

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

\textbf{Examples of Translation Strategies Applied}

(1) Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

\begin{quote}
A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became \textbf{four} rivers. The name of the first is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the second river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the third river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The fourth river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became \textbf{four} rivers. The name of \textbf{one} is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of \textbf{the next} river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the \textbf{third} river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The \textbf{last} river is the Euphrates.
\end{quote}

(2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

\begin{quote}
The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,...the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
They cast \textbf{twenty-four} lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim,...Delaiah, and Maaziah.
\end{quote}
**Personification**

**Description**

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

- Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

Or sin:

- sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things, such as wealth, as if they were relationships between people.

- You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

**Reasons this is a translation issue**

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

**Examples from the Bible**

- You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

- Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

**Translation Strategies**

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

1. Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
2. In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

   - ...sin crouches
at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

- **sin** is at your door, **waiting to attack you**

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - This can be translated with the word “as.”
  - **sin is crouching at the door, just as a wild animal does waiting to attack a person.**

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

- **even the** winds and the sea obey him

(Matthew 8:27 ULT) - The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

  - He even **controls the winds and the sea.**

**NOTE:** We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-apostrophe]]
- [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: Esther 4:14)
Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

Those who stood by said, “Is this how you insult God's high priest?” (Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking about his way of insulting God's high priest. Rather they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purpose of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.
And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden... (Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, “Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?” If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the answer after the question.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?

Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)
Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? *None of you would do that!*

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

*What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?*

*It is like a mustard seed...* (Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

*This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed...”*

Is this how you insult God's high priest?

(Acts 23:4 ULT)

*You should not insult God’s high priest!*

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?

(Job 3:11 ULT)

*I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!*

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?

(Luke 1:43 ULT)

*How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!*

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

*Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel?* (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

*You still rule the kingdom of Israel, do you not?*

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

*Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?* (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

*If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, would you give him a stone?*

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?

? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

*What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils?* Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

*(Go back to: Esther 4:14; 6:6; 7:8; 8:6; 9:12)*
Symbolic Action

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their head up and down to mean "Yes" or turn their head from side to side to mean "No". Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason this is a translation issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture, and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means "I am surprised" or "What did you say?" In others cultures it means "Yes".

In the Bible people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples from the Bible

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in to his home, and have a meal with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.
Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT)
   Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)
   Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41)
   Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20)
   Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT) - Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) - Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.
   Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

(Go back to: Esther 2:17; 3:2; 3:5; 4:1; 4:16; 5:9; 6:12; 7:8)
Synecdoche

Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said "my soul," which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

"My hands" is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person's accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

"My soul exalts the Lord." (Luke 1:46 ULT)

"I exalt the Lord."

...the Pharisees said to him (Mark 2:24 ULT)

...a representative of the Pharisees said to him...

...I looked on all the deeds that my hands
had accomplished... (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

(Go back to: Esther 1:3; 1:10; 3:9; 8:7)
Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: "How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?"

**Description**

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

**Reason this is a translation issue**

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

**Translation Principles**

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

**Examples from the Bible**

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals (Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made great lights (Psalm 136:7 ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins...will be white like snow (Isaiah 1:18 ULT)
People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

**Translation Strategies**

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

- Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves
  . (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

- Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly hungry and dangerous animals.

“Ravenous wolves” is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See Translating Metaphors.)

- We have here only five loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

- We have here only five loaves of baked grain seeds and two fish

(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

- your sins...will be white like snow
  (Isaiah 1:18 ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

- your sins...will be white like milk your sins...will be white like the moon

(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

- Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh
  . But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word “medicine.”

- Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with a medicine called myrrh. But he refused to drink it.

We have here only five loaves of bread
and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

| We have here only five loaves of **baked crushed seed bread** and two fish |

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

| **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for** jackals |

(Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

| **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for** wild dogs |

We have here only **five loaves of bread**
and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

| We have here only five **loaves of baked food** and two fish |

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

| **to him who made** great lights |

(Psalm 136:7 ULT)

| to him who made **the sun and the moon** |

Next we recommend you learn about:

— [[en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]]
— **How to Translate Names**

(Go back to: Esther 2:23; 5:14; 6:4; 8:2; 9:13)
administration, administrator, administering

Facts:

The terms “administration” and “administrator” refer to managing or governing of people of a country to help it function in an orderly way.

- Daniel and three other Jewish young men were appointed to be administrators, or government officials, over certain parts of Babylon.
- In the New Testament, administration is one of the gifts of the Holy Spirit.
- A person who has the spiritual gift of administration is able to lead and govern people as well as supervise the maintenance of buildings and other property.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “administrator” could include “governor” or “organizer” or “manager” or “ruler” or “government official.”
- The term “administration” could be translated as “governing” or “management” or “leadership.” or “organization.”
- Expressions such as “in charge of” or “taking care of” or “keeping order” could possibly be part of the translation of these terms.

(See also: Babylon, Daniel, gift, governor, Hananiah, Mishael, Azariah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:14
- Daniel 06:1-3
- Esther 09:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5532, H5608, H5632, H6213, H7860, G2941

(Go back to: Esther 1:3; 2:3; 5:11)
adversary, enemy

Definition:

An “adversary” is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

• Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
• When two nations fight, each can be called an “adversary” of the other.
• In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
• The term “adversary” may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

Bible References:

• 1 Timothy 05:14
• Isaiah 09:11
• Job 06:23
• Lamentations 04:12
• Luke 12:59
• Matthew 13:25

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G476, G480, G2189, G2190, G5227

(Go back to: Esther 3:10; 7:6; 8:1; 8:13; 9:1; 9:5; 9:10; 9:16; 9:22; 9:24)
Ahasuerus

Facts:

Ahasuerus was a king who ruled over the ancient kingdom of Persia for twenty years.

- This was during the time the exiled Jews were living in Babylonia, which had come under Persian rule.
- Another name for this king may have been Xerxes.
- After sending away his queen in a fit of anger, King Ahasuerus later chose a Jewish woman named Esther to be his new wife and queen.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Babylon, Esther, Ethiopia, exile, Persia)

Bible References:

- Daniel 09:01
- Esther 10:1-2
- Ezra 04:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H325

ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Definition:

The term “father” refers to a person’s male parent.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: God the Father, son, Son of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:02
- Acts 07:32
- Acts 07:45
- Acts 22:03
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- John 04:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 03:07
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 01:07
- Matthew 03:09
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 04:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H2, H25, H369, H539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G540, G1080, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

(Go back to: Esther 2:7; 4:14)
**appoint, appointed**

**Definition:**

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 08:11
- Acts 03:20
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 03:9-10

**Word Data:**


(Go back to: Esther 2:3; 2:17)
**assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting**

**Definition:**

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

**Old Testament**

- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

**New Testament**

- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

**Translation Suggestions**

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: hyperbole)
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”

(See also: council)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 08:14
- Acts 07:38
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 04:20-21
- Nehemiah 08:1-3

**Word Data:**


*(Go back to: Esther 9:2; 9:16; 9:18)*
Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian

Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word “Babylon” refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the “king of Babylon” ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called “Chaldea” and the people living there were the “Chaldeans.” As a result, the term “Chaldea” was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: synecdoche)

(See also: Babel, Chaldea, Judah, Nebuchadnezzar)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:01
- 2 Kings 17:24-26
- Acts 07:43
- Daniel 01:02
- Ezekiel 12:13
- Matthew 01:11
- Matthew 01:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 20:06 About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the Babylonians, to attack the kingdom of Judah. Babylon was a powerful empire.
- 20:07 But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against Babylon. So, the Babylonians came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- 20:09 Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.
- 20:11 About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated Babylon.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3778, H3779, H8152, H894, H895, H896, G897

(Go back to: Esther 2:6)
banquet

Definition:
A banquet is a large, formal meal that usually includes several food courses.

- In ancient times, kings often served banquet meals to entertain political leaders and other important guests.
- This could also be translated as, "elaborate meal" or "important feast" or "multi-course meal."

Bible References:
- Daniel 05:10
- Isaiah 05:11-12
- Jeremiah 16:08
- Luke 05:29-32
- Song of Solomon 02:3-4

Word Data:
- Strong's: H4960, H4961, H8354, G1173, G1403

(Back to: Esther 5:4; 5:5; 5:6; 5:8; 5:12; 5:14; 6:14; 7:2; 7:7; 7:8)
Benjamin, Benjamite

Facts:

Benjamin was the youngest son born to Jacob and his wife Rachel. His name means, “son of my right hand.”

- He and his older brother Joseph were the only children of Rachel, who died after Benjamin was born.
- The descendants of Benjamin became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- King Saul was from the Israelite tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was also from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, Jacob, Joseph (OT), Paul, Rachel, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 02:08
- Acts 13:21-22
- Genesis 35:18
- Genesis 42:04
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Philippians 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G958

(Go back to: Esther 2:5)
bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Definition:
To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: humble, worship)

Bible References:
- 2 Kings 05:18
- Exodus 20:05
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:05
- Matthew 02:11
- Revelation 03:09

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H86, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4098

(Go back to: Esther 3:2; 3:5)
brother

Definition:

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: apostle, God the Father, sister, spirit)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 03:01
- Philippians 04:21
- Revelation 01:09

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

(Go back to: Esther 10:3)
call, call out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: pray, cry)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 01:09
- Ephesians 04:01
- Galatians 01:15
- Matthew 02:15
- Philippians 03:14
Word Data:


(Go back to: Esther 6:9; 6:11)
captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured

Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to “take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as, “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as, “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as, “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as, “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: Babylon, exile, prison, seize)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:05
- Isaiah 20:04
- Jeremiah 43:03
- Luke 04:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G161, G162, G163, G164, G2221

(Go back to: Esther 2:6)
column, pillar

Definition:
The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- As a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: foundation, false god, image)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:04
- Exodus 13:21
- Exodus 33:09
- Genesis 31:45
- Proverbs 09:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H352, H547, H2106, H2553, H3730, H4552, H4676, H4678, H4690, H5324, H5333, H5982, H8490, G4769

(See back to: Esther 1:6)
command, commandment

Definition:

The term “command” means to order someone to do something. The term “commandment” refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term “commandment” sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, statute, law, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Luke 01:06
- Matthew 01:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 01:17-19
- Romans 07:7-8

Word Data:


(Go back to: Esther 1:15; 2:20; 3:2; 3:3; 3:12; 4:5; 4:10; 8:9)
concubine

Definition:

A concubine is a woman who is a secondary wife for a man who already has a wife. Usually a concubine is not legally married to the man.

- In the Old Testament, concubines were often female slaves.
- A concubine could be acquired by purchase, through military conquest, or in payment of a debt.
- For a king, having many concubines was a sign of power.

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 03:07
- Genesis 22:24
- Genesis 25:5-6
- Genesis 35:21-22
- Genesis 36:12
- Judges 19:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3904, H6370

(Go back to: Esther 2:14)
condemn, condemned, condemnation

Definition:

The terms “condemn” and “condemnation” refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

- Often the word “condemn” includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
- Sometimes “condemn” means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
- The term “condemnation” refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “harshly judge” or “criticize falsely.”
- The phrase “condemn him” could be translated as, “judge that he is guilty” or “state that he must be punished for his sin.”
- The term “condemnation” could be translated as, “harsh judging” or “declaring to be guilty” or “punishment of guilt.”

(See also: judge, punish)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:20
- Job 09:29
- John 05:24
- Luke 06:37
- Matthew 12:07
- Proverbs 17:15-16
- Psalms 034:22
- Romans 05:16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6064, H7034, H7561, H8199, G176, G843, G2607, G2613, G2631, G2632, G2633, G2917, G2919, G2920, G5272, G6048
contempt, contemptible, not worth listening to

Facts:
The term “contempt” refers to a deep disrespect and dishonor that is shown toward something or someone. Something that is greatly dishonorable is called “contemptible.”

- A person or behavior that shows open disrespect for God is also called “contemptible” and could be translated as “greatly disrespectful” or “completely dishonorable” or “deserving scorn.”
- To “hold in contempt” means to regard someone as having less value or to judge someone as less worthy than oneself.
- The following expressions have a similar meaning: “have contempt for” or “show contempt for” or “be in contempt of” or “treat with contempt.” These all mean to “strongly disrespect” or “strongly dishonor” something or someone by what is said and done.
- When King David sinned by committing adultery and murder, God said that David had “shown contempt for” God. It means he had greatly disrespected and dishonored God by doing that.

(See also: dishonor)

Bible References:

- Daniel 12:1-2
- Proverbs 15:5-6
- Psalms 031:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H936, H937, H959, H963, H1860, H7043, H7589, H5006, G1848

(Go back to: Esther 1:18)
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love

Definition:

In biblical times, the term translated as "covenant faithfulness" was used to describe the kind of faithfulness, loyalty, kindness, and love that was both expected and demonstrated between people who were closely related to one another, either by marriage or by blood. This same term is used often in the Bible to describe the way God relates to his people, especially his commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to them.

- The way this term is translated can depend on how each of the individual terms "covenant" and "faithfulness" are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term might include: “faithful love;” “loyal, committed love;” or “loving dependability.”

(See also: covenant, faithful, grace, Israel, people of God, promise)

Bible References:

- Ezra 03:11
- Numbers 14:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2617

(Go back to: Esther 2:17)
crown, crowned

Definition:

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term to “crown” means to put a crown on someone's head; figuratively it means, to “honor.”

- Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
- A crown was intended to be a symbol of a king's power and wealth.
- By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus' head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
- In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
- Used figuratively, to “crown” means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King.
- Pauls calls fellow believers his “joy and crown.” In this expression, “crown” is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.
- When used figuratively, “crown” could be translated as “prize” or “honor” or “reward.”
- The figurative use of to “crown” could be translated as to “honor” or to “decorate.”
- If a person is “crowned” this could be translated as “a crown was put on his head.”
- The expression, “he was crowned with glory and honor” could be translated as, “glory and honor were bestowed on him” or “he was given glory and honor” or “he was endowed with glory and honor.”

(See also: glory, king, olive)

Bible References:

- John 19:03
- Lamentations 05:16
- Matthew 27:29
- Philippians 04:01
- Psalms 021:03
- Revelation 03:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3803, H3804, H5145, H5849, H5850, H6936, G1238, G4735, G4737

(Go back to: Esther 1:11; 2:17; 6:8; 8:15)
cry, cry out, outcry

Definition:
The terms “cry” or “cry out” usually mean to say something loudly or urgently. Someone can “cry out” in pain, distress, anger, or fear, often with the intent of asking for help.

• The phrase “cry out” can also mean to shout or to call out with the intent of asking for help.
• This term could also be translated as “exclaim loudly” or “urgently ask for help,” depending on the context.
• An expression such as, “I cry out to you” could be translated as, “I call to you for help” or “I urgently ask you for help.”

(See also: call, plead)

Bible References:

• Job 27:09
• Mark 05:5-6
• Mark 06:48-50
• Psalm 022:1-2

Word Data:


(Go back to: Esther 9:31)
decree, decreed

Definition:

The term "decree" means to give an order that must be obeyed. The order itself can also be called a "decree."

- A "decree" is similar to a "law," but is generally used more often to refer to something spoken rather than written.
- The term "decree" could be translated as to "order" or to "command" or to "formally require" or to "publicly make a law."
- God's laws are also called decrees, statutes, or commandments.
- An example of a decree by a human ruler was the proclamation by Caesar Augustus that everyone living in the Roman Empire must go back to their hometown in order to be counted in a census.

(See also: command, declare, law)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:13-15
- 1 Kings 08:57-58
- Acts 17:5-7
- Daniel 02:13
- Esther 01:22
- Luke 02:01

Word Data:


(Go back to: Esther 1:19; 1:20; 2:8; 3:15; 4:3; 8:17; 9:1; 9:32)
delight

Definition:

The term “delight” means great pleasure or great joy.

- To “delight in” something means to "to take pleasure in" or "take joy in" or "be happy about" it. If a person "delights in" something, it means that he enjoys it very much.
- When something is very agreeable or pleasing it is called “delightful.”
- The expression “my delight is in the law of Yahweh” could be translated as “the law of Yahweh gives me great joy” or “I love to obey the laws of Yahweh” or “I am happy when I obey Yahweh's commands.”
- The phrases “take no delight in” and “have no delight in” could be translated as “not at all pleased by” or “not happy about.”
- The phrase “delight himself in” means “he enjoys doing” something or “he is very happy about” something or someone.
- The term “delights” refers to things that a person enjoys. This could be translated as “pleasures” or “things that give joy.”
- An expression such as “I delight to do your will” could also be translated as “I enjoy doing your will” or “I am very happy when I obey you.”

Bible References:

- Proverbs 08:30
- Psalm 001:02
- Psalms 119:69-70
- Song of Solomon 01:03

Word Data:


(Go back to: Esther 2:14; 6:6; 6:7; 6:9; 6:11)
**deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue**

**Definition:**
To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term “deliver over to” or “deliver up to” has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

**Translation Suggestions:**
- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, “deliver over” can be translated as “betray to” or “hand over” or “give over.”
- The word “deliverer” can also be translated as “rescuer” or “liberator.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “governor” or “judge” or “leader.”

(See also: judge, save)

**Bible References:**
- 2 Corinthians 01:10
- Acts 07:35
- Galatians 01:04
- Judges 10:12

**Examples from the Bible stories:**
- **16:03** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another deliverer.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many deliverers who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

**Word Data:**

(Go back to: Esther 4:14)
**Definition:**

The term “destroy” means to completely make an end to something, so that it no longer exists.

- The term “destroyer” means, “a person who destroys.”
- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as “the destroyer of the firstborn.” This could be translated as “the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males.”
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called “the Destroyer.” He is the “one who destroys” because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.

(See also: angel, Egypt, firstborn, Passover)

**Bible References:**

- Exodus 12:23
- Hebrews 11:28
- Jeremiah 06:26
- Judges 16:24

**Word Data:**


die, dead, deadly, death,

Definition:

The term "death" refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

1. Physical death

   • To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
   • The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Eternal death

   • Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
   • This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
   • This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

   • To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
   • In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to “not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
   • Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to “pass away” in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
   • In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
   • In some languages it may be more clear to say “eternal death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
   • The expression “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: nominal adjective)
   • The expression "put to death" could also be translated as “kill” or “murder” or "execute."

(See also: believe, faith, life)

Bible References:

• 1 Corinthians 15:21
• 1 Thessalonians 04:17
• Acts 10:42
• Acts 14:19
• Colossians 02:15
• Colossians 02:20
• Genesis 02:15-17
• Genesis 34:27
• Matthew 16:28
• Romans 05:10
• Romans 05:12
• Romans 06:10
Examples from the Bible stories:

• **01:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
• **02:11** “Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt.”
• **07:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
• **37:05** “Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**.”
• **40:08** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
• **43:07** “Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead.”
• **48:02** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
• **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

Word Data:


(Go back to: Esther 2:7; 4:11)
Esther

Facts:

Esther was a Jewish woman who became queen of the Persian kingdom during the time of the Babylonian captivity of the Jews.

- The book of Esther tells the story of how Esther became the wife of the Persian King Ahasuerus and how God used her to save her people.
- Esther was an orphan who was raised by her godly older cousin, Mordecai.
- Her obedience to her adoptive father helped her to be obedient to God.
- Esther obeyed God and risked her life in order to save her people, the Jews.
- The story of Esther illustrates God’s sovereign control over the events of history, especially how he protects his people and works through those who obey him.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Ahasuerus, Babylon, Mordecai, Persia)

Bible References:

- Esther 02:7
- Esther 02:15
- Esther 07:01
- Esther 08:02

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H635

Ethiopia, Ethiopian

Facts:

Ethiopia is a country in Africa located just south of Egypt, bordered by the Nile River to the west and by the Red Sea to the east. A person from Ethiopia is an “Ethiopian.”

- Ancient Ethiopia was located south of Egypt and included land that is now part of several modern-day African countries, such as Sudan, modern Ethiopia, Somalia, Kenya, Uganda, Central African Republic, and Chad.
- In the Bible, Ethiopia is sometimes called “Cush” or “Nubia.”
- The countries of Ethiopia (“Cush”) and Egypt are often mentioned together in the Bible, perhaps because they were located next to each other and their people may have had some of the same ancestors.
- God sent Philip the evangelist to a desert where he shared the good news about Jesus with an Ethiopian eunuch.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Cush, Egypt, eunuch, Philip)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:27
- Acts 08:30
- Acts 08:32-33
- Acts 08:36-38
- Isaiah 18:1-2
- Nahum 03:09
- Zephaniah 03:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G128

(Go back to: Esther 1:1; 8:9)
**evil, wicked, unpleasant**

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, sin, [good](#), righteous, demon)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 06:10
- 3 John 01:10
- Genesis 02:17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:01
- Job 08:20
- Judges 09:57
- Luke 06:22-23
- Matthew 07:11-12
- Proverbs 03:07
- Psalms 022:16-17

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **02:04** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and evil like he does.”
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very wicked and violent.
- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among wicked people.
- **04:02** God saw that if they all kept working together to do evil, they could do many more sinful things.
- **08:12** “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for good!”
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many evil things.
- **17:01** But then he (Saul) became a wicked man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were evil.
- **29:08** The king was so angry that he threw the wicked servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:02** They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak evil things about Moses and God!”
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.
Word Data:


(Go back to: Esther 7:6; 7:7; 8:3; 8:6; 9:2; 9:25)
exile, exiled

Definition:
The term “exile” refers to people being forced to live somewhere away from their home country.

- People are usually sent into exile for punishment or for political reasons.
- A conquered people may be taken into exile to the country of the conquering army, in order to work for them.
- The “Babylonian exile” (or “the exile”) is a period in Bible history when many Jewish citizens of the region of Judah were taken from their homes and forced to live in Babylon. It lasted 70 years.
- The phrase “the exiles” refers to people who are living in exile, away from their home country.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “exile” could also be translated as to “send away” or to “force out” or to “banish.”
- The term “the exile” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the sent away time” or “the time of banishment” or “the time of forced absence” or “banishment.”
- Ways to translate “the exiles” could include “the exiled people” or “the people who were banished” or “the people exiled to Babylon.”

(See also: Babylon, Judah)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 24:14
- Daniel 02:25-26
- Ezekiel 01:1-3
- Isaiah 20:04
- Jeremiah 29:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1541, H1546, H1547, H3212, H3318, H5080, H6808, H7617, H7622, H8689, G3927

(Go back to: Esther 2:6)
face, facial

Definition:
The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

• The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means “I” or “me.”
• In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
• To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
• Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
• When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
• To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
• The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
• The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

Translation Suggestions:

• If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
• The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
• The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
• Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
• The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
• The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
• To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
• The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
• The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

Bible References:

• Deuteronomy 05:04
• Genesis 33:10

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H600, H639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

family, household

Definition:

The term “family” refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. In the Bible, this term sometimes includes other close relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

• In biblical times, usually the oldest man was the major authority of a family.
• Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
• Some languages may have a broader word such as “clan” or “household” that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
• The New Testament often uses terms related to the concept of “family” to refer to the Church, meaning people who believe in Jesus.

(See also: clan, ancestor, house)

Bible References:

• 1 Kings 08:1-2
• 1 Samuel 18:18
• Exodus 01:21
• Joshua 02:12-13
• Luke 02:04

Word Data:

• Strong's: H1, H251, H272, H504, H1004, H1121, H2233, H2859, H2945, H3187, H4138, H4940, H5387, H5712, G1085, G3614, G3624, G3965

(Go back to: Esther 9:28)
fast, fasting

Definition:
The term to “fast” means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

- Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
- Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
- Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
- The verb to “fast” can also be translated as to “refrain from eating” or to “not eat.”
- The noun “fast” could be translated as “time of not eating” or “time of abstaining from food.”

(See also: Jewish leaders)

Bible References:
- 1 Kings 21:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 20:03
- Acts 13:1-3
- Jonah 03:4-5
- Luke 05:34
- Mark 02:19
- Matthew 06:18
- Matthew 09:15

Examples from the Bible stories:
- **25:01** Immediately after Jesus was baptized, the Holy Spirit led him out into the wilderness, where he fasted for forty days and forty nights.
- **34:08** “For example, I fast two times every week and I give you ten percent of all the money and goods that I receive.”
- **46:10** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were fasting and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, “Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do.”

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H2908, H5144, H6684, H6685, G3521, G3522

(Go back to: Esther 4:3; 4:16; 9:31)
favor, favorable, favoritism

Definition:
The term “favor” generally means approval. Someone who favors another person regards that person positively and approves of them.

- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means that both God and others approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.
- A “favor” can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.
- The term “favoritism” means an attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoritism is considered unfair.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include "approval" or "blessing" or "benefit."
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite,” which means to prefer above all others.

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 19:07
- 2 Corinthians 01:11
- Acts 24:27
- Genesis 41:16
- Genesis 47:25
- Genesis 50:05

Word Data:


(Stop back to: Esther 2:15; 2:17; 5:2; 5:8; 7:3; 8:5)
fear, afraid, dread

Definition:
The terms “fear” refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term “fear” can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king. The term “dread” refers to extreme or intense fear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “fear” can be translated in various ways, depending on the context. Some possibilities include: “be afraid;” “deeply respect;” or “deep respect;” “revere,” or “reverence;” or perhaps “be in awe of.”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- The sentence “The fear of God fell on all of them” might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;” or, “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;” or, “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”

(See also: marvel, awe, Lord, power, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:18
- Acts 02:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 06:14
- Jonah 01:09
- Luke 12:05
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:


(Go back to: Esther 8:17; 9:2; 9:3)
feast, feasting

Definition:

The term “feast” is a very general term that refers to an event where people gather to celebrate something by eating a large meal together. In biblical times, a feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In biblical times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- The term to “feast” could also be translated as to “eat lavishly” or to “celebrate by eating lots of food” or to “eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: festival, banquet)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- Jude 01:12-13
- Luke 02:43
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:01

Word Data:


(Go back to: Esther 1:3; 1:5; 1:9; 2:18; 8:17; 9:17; 9:18; 9:19; 9:22)
gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Definition:
A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the gate cannot be opened from the outside.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made.

Translation Suggestions:
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

Bible References:
- Acts 09:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:01
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 07:13

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G2374, G4439, G4440

(Go back to: Esther 2:19; 2:21; 3:2; 3:3; 4:2; 4:6; 5:9; 5:13; 6:10; 6:12)
**generation**

**Definition:**
The term “generation” generally refers to a group of people who are all alive at the same time. They are all born in the same general time period and are therefore about the same age.

- A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
- Parents and their children are from two different generations.
- In the Bible, the term “generation” is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

**Translation Suggestions**

- The phrase “this generation” or “people of this generation” could be translated as “the people living now” or “you people.”
- “This wicked generation” could also be translated as “these wicked people living now.”
- The expression “from generation to generation” or “from one generation to the next” could be translated as “people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren” or “people in every time period” or “people in this time period and future time periods” or “all people and their descendants.”
- “A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh” could also be translated as “Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him.”

(See also: descendant, evil, ancestor)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 15:19-21
- Exodus 03:13-15
- Genesis 15:16
- Genesis 17:07
- Mark 08:12
- Matthew 11:16
- Matthew 23:34-36
- Matthew 24:34

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1755, H1859, H8435, G1074

(Go back to: Esther 9:28)
glory, glorious, glorify

Definition:

The term “glory” is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term “glorify” means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term "glory" is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God's character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

Old Testament

- The specific phrase “the glory of Yahweh” in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh’s presence in a particular location.

New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term "glorify" carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God's greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God's greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as, “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: honor, majesty, exalt, obey, praise)

Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:02
- Luke 18:43
- Luke 02:09
- John 12:28
Examples from the Bible stories:

• 23:07 Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
• 25:06 Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
• 37:01 When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the glory of God.”
• 37:08 Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s glory if you believe in me?”

Word Data:


(Go back to: Esther 1:4; 5:11)
gold, golden

Definition:
Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling.
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: altar, ark of the covenant, false god, silver, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:07
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 01:15
- Acts 03:06
- Daniel 02:32

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G5552, G5553, G5554, G5557

(Go back to: Esther 1:6; 1:7; 4:11; 5:2; 8:4; 8:15)
The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God's character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: evil, holy, profit, righteous)

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:12
- Genesis 02:09
- Genesis 02:17
- James 03:13
- Romans 02:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 01:04 God saw that what he had created was good.
- 01:11 God plantedâ€¦ the tree of the knowledge of good and evil.”
- 01:12 Then God said, “It is not good for man to be alone.”
- 02:04 “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and evil like he does.”
- 08:12 “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for good!”
- 14:15 Joshua was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- 18:13 Some of these kings were good men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
28:01 "Good teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me ‘good’? There is only one who is good, and that is God."

Word Data:


(Go back to: Esther 1:10; 1:11; 1:19; 1:21; 2:2; 2:3; 2:7; 2:9; 3:9; 3:11; 5:4; 5:8; 5:9; 7:3; 7:9; 8:5; 8:8; 8:17; 9:13; 9:19; 9:22; 10:3)
govern, government, governor, proconsul

Definition:
A “governor” is a person who rules over a state, region, or territory. To “govern” means to guide, lead, or manage them.

- The term “proconsul” was a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
- In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
- A “government” consists of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

Translation Suggestions:
- The word “governor” can also be translated as “ruler” or “overseer” or “regional leader” or “one who rules over a small territory.”
- Depending on the context, the term “govern” could also be translated as, “rule over” or “lead” or “manage” or supervise.”
- The term “governor” should be translated differently than the terms for “king” or “emperor”, since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
- The term “proconsul” could also be translated as, “Roman governor” or “Roman provincial ruler.”

(See also: authority, king, power, province, Rome, ruler)

Bible References:
- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 23:22
- Acts 26:30
- Mark 13:9-10
- Matthew 10:18
- Matthew 27:1-2

Word Data:

(Go back to: Esther 3:12; 8:9; 9:3)
Definition:
The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. In the Bible, this term is associated with a person's power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
- To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God's service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: adversary, bless, captive, honor, power)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:25
- Acts 08:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 09:05
- Genesis 14:20
- John 03:35
- Mark 07:32
- Matthew 06:03

Word Data:


317 / 409
hang, hung

Definition:
The term “hang” means to suspend something or someone above the ground.

- In modern times, death by hanging is usually done by tying a rope around a person’s neck and suspending him from an elevated object until he dies. This elevated object can be any number of things, such as a tree or a gallows, that is, a platform built specifically for the purpose of hanging a person in order to kill him.
- In biblical times, however, ancient cultures may not have killed people by hanging in precisely the same way. For example, Jesus died while hanging on a wooden cross (sometimes called a “tree”), but there was nothing around his neck. The soldiers suspended him by nailing his hands (or wrists) and his feet to the cross.
- Some ancient cultures "hung" a person by impaling him on a wooden pole in such a way that he was suspended above the ground so that he could not escape. The person would be left there until he died.
- For many references to death by “hanging” in the Bible, the specific means of death is unknown.

Bible References:
- 2 Samuel 17:23
- Acts 10:39
- Galatians 03:13
- Genesis 40:22
- Matthew 27:3-5

Word Data:
- Strong's: H2614, H3363, H8518, G519

head

Definition:

The word “head” refers to the uppermost body part of a human body, above the neck. This term is often used figuratively to mean many different things, including “top,” “first,” “beginning,” “source,” and other concepts.

Some examples of various uses of the term "head" include:

- The expression “no razor will ever touch his head” means that he should never cut or shave his hair.
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top part of wheat or barley plants that contains the seeds. Similarly, the expression "head of a mountain" refers to the top part of the mountain.
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something, or the first in a series of things (can be objects or people).
- Often the term "head" refers to the most important person in a group or to a person who is in authority over others. For example, the phrase “You have made me the head over nations” means “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over....”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as “authority” or “ruler” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, some other ways to translate this term might include “top” or “beginning” or “source” or “leader.”

(See also: grain)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:51-54
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 09:22
- Colossians 02:10
- Colossians 02:19
- Numbers 01:04

Word Data:


(See back to: Esther 5:2; 6:12; 9:25)
heart

Definition:
The term “heart” refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: hard)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:17
- 1 Thessalonians 02:04
- 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
- Acts 08:22
- Acts 15:09
- Luke 08:15
- Mark 02:06
- Matthew 05:08
- Matthew 22:37

Word Data:


(See back to: Esther 1:10; 5:9; 6:6; 7:5)
honor

Definition:
The terms “honor” and to “honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

• Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
• God instructs Christians to honor others.
• Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
• The terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
• Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

• Other ways to translate “honor” could include “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
• The term to “honor” could be translated as to “show special respect to” or to “cause to be praised” or to “show high regard for” or to “highly value.”

(See also: dishonor, glory, glory, praise)

Bible References:

• 1 Samuel 02:8
• Acts 19:17
• John 04:44
• John 12:26
• Mark 06:04
• Matthew 15:06

Word Data:


(Go back to: Esther 1:20; 6:3; 6:6; 6:7; 6:9; 6:11; 8:16)
**horse, warhorse, horseback**

**Definition:**

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: chariot, donkey, Solomon)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 18:04
- 2 Kings 02:11
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Zechariah 06:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H47, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G2462

(See back to: Esther 6:8; 6:9; 6:10; 6:11; 8:10)
**Definition:**

The term “house” refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as “household” or “descendants,” etc.

- Sometimes the term "house" means “household,” referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Sometimes the term "house" means "family" or "descendants," referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

**Translation Suggestions**

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include “people of Israel” or “Israel's descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh's temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.” The phrase “house of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: David, descendant, house of God, household, kingdom of Israel, tabernacle, temple, Yahweh)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 07:42
- Acts 07:49
- Genesis 39:04
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 08:39
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 15:24

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1004, H1005, G3609, G3613, G3614, G3624

(See also: Esther 1:8; 1:22; 2:3; 2:9; 2:11; 2:13; 2:14; 4:14; 5:1; 5:10; 6:4; 6:12; 7:8; 7:9; 8:1; 8:2; 8:7)
Jerusalem

Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name “Jerusalem” is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include “Salem” “city of Jebus,” and “Zion.” Both “Jerusalem” and “Salem,” have the root meaning of “peace.”
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called “Zion” which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going “up” to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: Babylon, Christ, David, Jebusites, Jesus, Solomon, temple, Zion)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:26-27
- John 02:13
- Luke 04:9-11
- Luke 13:05
- Mark 03:7-8
- Mark 03:20-22
- Matthew 03:06
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 20:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 17:05 David conquered Jerusalem and made it his capital city.
- 18:02 In Jerusalem, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- 20:07 They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- 20:12 So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- 38:01 About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- 38:02 After Jesus and the disciples arrived in Jerusalem, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- 42:08 “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere.”
- 42:11 Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G2414, G2415, G2419

(Go back to: Esther 2:6)
Jew, Jewish

Facts:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson Jacob. The word “Jew” comes from the word “Judah.”

- People began to call the Israelites “Jews” after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.

(See also: Abraham, Jacob, Israel, Babylon, Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:05
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 14:5-7
- Colossians 03:11
- John 02:14
- Matthew 28:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 20:11 The Israelites were now called Jews and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon.
- 20:12 So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- 37:10 Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- 37:11 But the religious leaders of the Jews were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- 40:02 Pilate commanded that they write, “King of the Jews” on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus’ head.
- 46:06 Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3054, H3061, H3062, H3064, H3066, G2450, G2451, G2452, G2453, G2454

joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing

Definition:

joy

The term “joy” refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

rejoice

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said “my soul rejoices in God my Savior,” she meant “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or it could be translated “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” (See: metonymy)

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 08:10
- Psalm 048:02
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 02:9-10
- Luke 15:07
- John 03:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 05:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 05:23
- Philippians 04:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 05:16
- Philemon 01:4-7
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with joy.”
- **34:04** “The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with joy, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field.”
- **41:07** The women were full of fear and great joy. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:


(Go back to: Esther 5:9; 5:14; 8:15; 8:16; 8:17; 9:17; 9:18; 9:19; 9:22)
Judah

Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob’s older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the “tribe of Judah.” When used as the name of a region of land, the term “Judah” refers to the land given to the tribe of Judah, which includes the mountainous area to the south of the city of Jerusalem.

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon’s reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the “Lion of Judah.”
- The words “Jew” and “Judea” come from the name “Judah.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Jacob, Jew, Judah, Judea, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 01:09
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:02
- Luke 03:33
- Ruth 01:02

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3063

(Go back to: Esther 2:6)
judge, judgment

**Definition:**
The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God's judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

**Translation Suggestions:**
- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: **decrees, judge, judgment day, just, law, law**)

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 04:17
- 1 Kings 03:09
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 03:14
- James 02:04
- Luke 06:37
- Micah 03:9-11
- Psalm 054:01

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and judges the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always judge honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?”
- **50:14** But God will judge everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.
Word Data:


(Go back to: Esther 1:13)
**king, kingdom, kingship**

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term "king" might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, kingdom, kingdom of God)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Timothy 06:15-16
- 2 Kings 05:18
- 2 Samuel 05:03
- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 01:05
- Matthew 05:35
- Matthew 14:09

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:01** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:05** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:06** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936

**kingdom**

**Definition:**

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: authority, king, kingdom of God, kingdom of Israel, Judah, Judah, priest)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 02:12
- 2 Timothy 04:17-18
- Colossians 01:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 03:24
- Matthew 04:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 01:09

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two kingdoms after Solomon’s death.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the kingdom of Judah.
- **18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their kingdom in the northern part of the land and were called the kingdom of Israel.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and judges the people.
Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

(Go back to: Esther 1:4; 1:14; 1:20; 2:3; 3:6; 3:8; 5:3; 5:6; 7:2; 9:30)
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Definition:
The term “know” and "knowledge" means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression "to make known" means to tell information.

- The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as "distinguish." When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition "between."
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or "wisdom" or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 02:15
- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:05
- Luke 01:77

Word Data:


(Go back to: Esther 1:13; 2:22; 4:1; 4:11; 4:14)
law, principle

Definition:

A “law” is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A “principle” is a guideline for decision-making and behavior, and is usually not written down or enforced. However, sometimes the term "law" is used to mean a "principle."

- A "law" is similar to a "decree," but the term "law" is generally used to refer to something written rather than spoken.
- Both “law” and “principle” can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person’s behavior.
- This meaning of “law” is different from its meaning in the term “law of Moses,” where it refers to commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
- When a general law is being referred to, “law” could be translated as “principle” or “general rule.”

(See also: law of Moses, decree, command, declare)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 04:02
- Esther 03:8-9
- Exodus 12:12-14
- Genesis 26:05
- John 18:31
- Romans 07:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1285, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2708, H2710, H4687, H4941, H6310, H7560, H8451, G1785, G3548, G3551, G4747

(Go back to: Esther 1:8; 1:13; 1:15; 1:19; 2:8; 2:12; 3:8; 3:15; 4:3; 4:8; 4:11; 4:16; 8:13; 8:14; 8:17; 9:1; 9:13; 9:14)
life, live, living, alive

Definition:
The term "life" refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

1. Physical life
   • A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in "a life was saved".
   • Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living as in, "his life was enjoyable."
   • It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, "the end of his life."
   • The term "living" may refer to being physically alive, as in "my mother is still living." It may also refer to
     dwelling somewhere as in, "they were living in the city."
   • In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of "death."

2. Eternal life
   • A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy
     Spirit living in him.
   • The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing
     eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:
   • Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as "existence" or "person" or "soul" or "being" or
     "experience."
   • The term "live" could be translated by "dwell" or "reside" or "exist."
   • The expression "end of his life" could be translated as "when he stopped living."
   • The expression "spared their lives' could be translated as "allowed them to live" or "did not kill them."
   • The expression "they risked their lives" could be translated as "they put themselves in danger" or "they did
     something that could have killed them."
   • When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term "life" could be translated in the following ways: "eternal
     life" or "God making us alive in our spirits" or "new life by God's Spirit" or "being made alive in our inner
     self."
   • Depending on the context, the expression "give life" could also be translated as "cause to live" or "give
     eternal life" or "cause to live eternally."

(See also: death, everlasting)

Bible References:
   • 2 Peter 01:03
   • Acts 10:42
   • Genesis 02:07
   • Genesis 07:22
   • Hebrews 10:20
   • Jeremiah 44:02
   • John 01:04
   • Judges 02:18
   • Luke 12:23
   • Matthew 07:14
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed life into him.
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world.
- **08:13** When Joseph’s brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still alive, he was very happy.
- **17:09** However, toward the end of his [David's] life he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?”
- **35:05** Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life.”
- **44:05** “You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of life, but God raised him from the dead.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

(Go back to: Esther 4:11; 7:3; 7:7; 8:11; 9:16; 9:31)
**lord, Lord, master, sir**

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: God, Jesus, ruler, Yahweh)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 39:02
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Psalms 086:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:04
- Lamentations 02:02
- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 09:09
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:05** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, “In God’s word, he commands his people, ‘Do not test the Lord your God.’”
- **25:07** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **26:03** This is the year of the Lord’s favor.
- **27:02** The law expert replied that God’s law says, “Love the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind.”
- **31:05** Then Peter said to Jesus, “Master, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water”
- **43:09** “But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and Messiah!”
- **47:03** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her masters as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be saved.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H113, H136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G203, G634, G962, G1203, G2962
lots, casting lots

Definition:

In the Bible, a “lot” is a marked object(s) used as a way of making a fair and/or random decision, usually for the purpose of selecting a specific person within a group. “Casting lots” refers to the process of using "lots" to make a fair and/or random decision.

- In modern times, some cultures "draw" or "pull out" lots using a bunch of straws. Someone holds the straws so that no one can see how long they are. Each person pulls out a straw and the one who picks the longest (or shortest) straw is the one who is chosen.
- In biblical times, the objects cast (the "lots") were probably small marked stones. It is unknown how the "lots" actually indicated a decision, but it probably involved dropping or throwing marked stones on the ground.
- The phrase “casting lots” can be translated as “tossing lots” or “throwing lots” or “rolling lots.” The translation of “cast” should not sound like the lots were being thrown a long distance.
- If a decision is made “by lot,” this could be translated as “by casting lots” or "by throwing lots," etc.

(See also: Elizabeth, priest, Zechariah (OT), Zechariah (NT))

Bible References:

- Jonah 01:07
- Luke 01:8-10
- Luke 23:34
- Mark 15:22
- Matthew 27:35-37
- Psalms 022:18-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1486, H5307, G2819, G2975

(Go back to: Esther 3:7; 9:24)
love, beloved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

   * Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
   * When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
   * In the ULT, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.

   * This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
   * The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.

3. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

Translation Suggestions:

* Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
* Some languages may have a special word for the kind of selfless, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for selflessly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
* Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
* In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”
* Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
* Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: covenant, death, sacrifice, save, sin)

Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 13:07
* 1 John 03:02
* 1 Thessalonians 04:10
* Galatians 05:23
* Genesis 29:18
* Isaiah 56:06
* Jeremiah 02:02
* John 03:16
Examples from the Bible stories:

- 27:02 The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And love your neighbor as yourself."
- 33:08 "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his love for God."
- 36:05 As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, “This is my Son whom I love.”
- 39:10 “Everyone who loves the truth listens to me.”
- 47:01 She (Lydia) loved and worshiped God.
- 48:01 When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve loved each other, and they loved God.
- 49:03 He (Jesus) taught that you need to love other people the same way you love yourself.
- 49:04 He (Jesus) also taught that you need to love God more than you love anything else, including your wealth.
- 49:07 Jesus taught that God loves sinners very much.
- 49:09 But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- 49:13 God loves you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:


(Go back to: Esther 2:17)
Mede, Medes, Media

Facts:

Media was an ancient empire located east of Assyria and Babylonia, and north of Elam and Persia. The people who lived in the empire of Media were called “Medes.”

- The Media empire covered parts of what are present-day Turkey, Iran, Syria, Iraq and Afghanistan.
- The Medes were closely associated with the Persians and the two empires joined forces to conquer the Babylonian empire.
- Babylonia was invaded by Darius the Mede during the time that the prophet Daniel was living there.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Assyria, Babylon, Cyrus, Daniel, Darius, Elam, Persia)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 17:06
- Acts 02:09
- Daniel 05:28
- Esther 01:3-4
- Ezra 06:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4074, H4075, H4076, H4077, G3370

(Go back to: Esther 1:3; 1:14; 1:18; 1:19; 10:2)
Mordecai

Facts:

Mordecai was a Jewish man living in the country of Persia. He was the guardian of his cousin Esther, who later became the wife of the Persian king, Ahasuerus.

- While working at the royal palace, Mordecai overheard men plotting together to kill King Ahasuerus. He reported this and the king's life was saved.
- Some time later, Mordecai also found out about a plan to kill all the Jews in the kingdom of Persia. He advised Esther to appeal to the king to save her people.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Ahasuerus, Babylon, Esther, Persia)

Bible References:

- Esther 02:06
- Esther 03:06
- Esther 08:02
- Esther 10:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4782

mourn, mourner, weeping

Facts:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: sackcloth, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 01:11
- Genesis 23:02
- Luke 07:31-32
- Matthew 11:17

Word Data:


(Go back to: Esther 9:22)
name

Definition:

The term “name” refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term “name” is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, “name” could refer to a person’s reputation, as in “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” could also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone could refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: metonymy)

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression “make a name for ourselves” could be translated “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression “call his name” could be translated as “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression “those who love your name” could be translated as “those who love you.”
- The expression “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See also: call)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:12
- 2 Timothy 02:19
- Acts 04:07
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 09:27
- Genesis 12:02
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:05

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

(Go back to: Esther 2:14; 2:22; 3:12; 8:8; 8:10; 9:26)
Nebuchadnezzar

Facts:

Nebuchadnezzar was a king of the Babylonian Empire whose powerful army conquered many people groups and nations.

- Under Nebuchadnezzar’s leadership, the Babylonian army attacked and conquered the kingdom of Judah, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives. The captives were forced to live there for a period of 70 years known as the “Babylonian Exile.
- One of the exiles, Daniel, interpreted some of King Nebuchadnezzar’s dreams.
- Three other captured Israelites, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, were thrown into a fiery furnace when they refused to bow down to a gigantic gold statue that Nebuchadnezzar had made.
- King Nebuchadnezzar was very arrogant and worshiped false gods. When he conquered Judah, he stole many gold and silver objects from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Because Nebuchadnezzar was proud and refused to turn away from worshiping false gods, Yahweh caused him to be destitute for seven years, living like an animal. After the seven years, God restored Nebuchadnezzar when he humbled himself and praised the one true God, Yahweh.

(Bible References: 1 Chronicles 06:15, 2 Kings 25:1-3, Daniel 01:02, Daniel 04:04, Ezekiel 26:08)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:06** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the Babylonians, to attack the kingdom of Judah.
- **20:06** The king of Judah agreed to be Nebuchadnezzar’s servant and pay him a lot of money every year.
- **20:08** To punish the king of Judah for rebelling, Nebuchadnezzar’s soldiers killed the king’s sons in front of him and then made him blind.
- **20:09** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5019, H5020

(Translation suggestions: **How to Translate Names**)

(See also: arrogant, Azariah, Babylon, Hananiah, Mishael)

(Go back to: Esther 2:6)
noble, nobleman, royal official

Definition:

The term “noble” refers to something that is excellent and of high quality. A “nobleman” is a person who belongs to a high political or social class. A man “of noble birth” is one who was born a nobleman.

- A nobleman was often an officer of the state, a close servant to the king.
- The term “nobleman” could also be translated by, “king’s official” or “government officer.”

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 23:20-21
- Daniel 04:36
- Ecclesiastes 10:17
- Luke 19:12
- Psalm 016:1-3

Word Data:


(Go back to: Esther 1:3; 1:11; 1:14; 1:16; 1:18; 1:21; 2:18; 3:1; 3:12; 5:11; 6:9; 8:9; 9:3)
obey, obedient

Definition:

The term “obey” means to do what has been commanded by a person or law. The term “obedient” describes someone who obeys. Sometimes a command prohibits doing something, as in “do not steal.” In this case, to “obey” means not to steal.

- Usually the term “obey” is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority. For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate obey could include a word or phrase that means “do what is commanded” or “follow orders” or “do what God says to do.”
- The term “obedient” could be translated as “doing what was commanded” or “following orders” or “doing what God commands.”

(See also: citizen, command, disobey, kingdom, law)

Bible References:

- Acts 05:32
- Acts 06:7
- Genesis 28:6-7
- James 01:25
- James 02:10
- Luke 06:47
- Matthew 07:26
- Matthew 19:20-22
- Matthew 28:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 03:04 Noah obeyed God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- 05:06 Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- 05:10 “Because you (Abraham) have _obeyed_ me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family”
- 05:10 But the Egyptians did not believe God or obey his commands.
- 13:07 If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H2388, H3349, H4928, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G191, G3980, G3982, G5083, G5084, G5218, G5219, G5255, G5292, G5293, G5442

(Go back to: Esther 1:15; 3:8)
oversee, overseer

Definition:

The term “oversee” refers to a person who is in charge of the work and welfare of other people.

- In the Old Testament, an overseer had the job of making sure the workers under him did their work well.
- In the New Testament, this term is used to describe leaders of the early Christian church. Their work was to take care of the spiritual needs of the church, making sure the believers received accurate biblical teaching.
- Paul refers to an overseer as being like a shepherd who takes care of the believers in a local church, who are his “flock.”
- The overseer, like a shepherd, keeps watch over the flock. He guards and protects the believers from false spiritual teaching and other evil influences.
- In the New Testament, the terms “overseers,” “elders,” and “shepherds/pastors” are different ways of referring to the same spiritual leaders.

Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could be “supervisor” or “caretaker” or “manager.”
- When referring to a leader of a local group of God’s people, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “spiritual supervisor” or “someone who takes care of the spiritual needs of a group of believers” or “person who oversees the spiritual needs of the Church.”

(See also: church, elder, pastor, shepherd)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 26:31-32
- 1 Timothy 03:02
- Acts 20:28
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Philippians 01:01

Word Data:


(Go back to: Esther 1:8; 2:3; 2:8; 2:14; 2:15)
palace

Definition:
The term “palace” refers to the building or house where a king lived, along with his family members and servants.

- The high priest also lived in a palace complex, as mentioned in the New Testament.
- Palaces were very ornate, with beautiful architecture and furnishings.
- The buildings and furnishings of a palace were constructed of stone or wood, and often were overlaid with expensive wood, gold, or ivory.
- Many other people also lived and worked in the palace complex, which usually included several buildings and courtyards.

(See also: courtyard, high priest, king)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 28:7-8
- 2 Samuel 11:2-3
- Daniel 05:5-6
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Psalms 045:08

Word Data:


(Go back to: Esther 1:5; 1:9; 2:8; 2:9; 2:16; 4:13; 5:1; 7:7; 7:8; 9:4)
peace, peaceful, peacemakers

Definition:
The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

• “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
• To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
• A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
• To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
• A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
• The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
• The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

• 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
• Acts 07:26
• Colossians 01:18-20
• Colossians 03:15
• Galatians 05:23
• Luke 07:50
• Luke 12:51
• Mark 04:39
• Matthew 05:09
• Matthew 10:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

• 15:06 God had commanded the Israelites not to make a peace treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
• 15:12 Then God gave Israel peace along all its borders.
• 16:03 Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
• 21:13 He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people's sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
• 48:14 David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and peace, forever.
• 50:17 Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

• Strong's: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G269, G1514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

(Go back to: Esther 2:11; 9:30; 10:3)
people, people group,

Definition:

The terms “people” and “people group” refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term “people” can refer to a “people group” or “family” or “relatives” or “army.”
- In plural form, the term “peoples” often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term “nations” is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: descendant, nation, tribe, world)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:51-53
- 1 Samuel 08:07
- Deuteronomy 28:09
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 01:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 14:02 God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- 21:02 God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- 42:08 “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere.”
• **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
• **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
• **50:03** He (Jesus) said, “Go and make disciples of all **people groups**!” and, “The fields are ripe for harvest!”

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H249, H523, H524, H776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G1074, G1085, G1218, G1484, G2560, G2992, G3793

(Go back to: Esther 1:5; 1:11; 1:16; 1:22; 2:10; 2:20; 3:6; 3:8; 3:12; 3:14; 4:8; 7:3; 7:4; 8:6; 8:9; 8:11; 8:13; 8:17; 9:2; 10:3)
perish

Definition:
The term “perish” means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or disaster. In the New Testament, it often has the spiritual meaning of being lost or separated from the people of God.

Spiritual Meaning of "Perish:"

• People who are “perishing” are those who have refused to trust in Jesus for their salvation.
• Those who “perish” will not live eternally with God in heaven. Instead, they will live eternally in hell under God's punishment.
• Everyone will die physically, but only those who do not trust in Jesus for their salvation will perish eternally.
• When “perish” is used in a spiritual sense, make sure that your translation expresses this differently than dying physically.

Translation Suggestions:

• Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include "be lost from God's people," “die eternally,” “be punished in hell,” or “be destroyed.”
• Try to use a term or expression that does not only mean "die physically" or “cease to exist."

(See also: death, everlasting)

Bible References:

• 1 Peter 01:23
• 2 Corinthians 02:16-17
• 2 Thessalonians 02:10
• Jeremiah 18:18
• Psalms 049:18-20
• Zechariah 09:5-7
• Zechariah 13:08

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H6, H7, H8, H1478, H1820, H1826, H5486, H5595, H6544, H8045, G599, G622, G684, G853, G1311, G2704, G4881, G5356

(Go back to: Esther 4:14; 4:16; 9:28)
Persia, Persians

Definition:
Persia was a country that also became a powerful empire founded by Cyrus the Great in 550 BC. The country of Persia was located southeast of Babylonia and Assyria in a region that is now the modern-day country of Iran.

- The people of Persia were called “Persians.”
- Under King Cyrus’ decree, the Jews were freed from their captivity in Babylon and allowed to go home, and the temple in Jerusalem was rebuilt, with funds provided by the Persian Empire.
- King Artaxerxes was the ruler of the Persian Empire when Ezra and Nehemiah went back to Jerusalem to rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- Esther became a queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.

(See also: Ahasuerus, Artaxerxes, Assyria, Babylon, Cyrus, Esther, Ezra, Nehemiah)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 36:20
- Daniel 10:13
- Esther 01:3-4
- Ezekiel 27:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6539, H6540, H6542, H6543

(Go back to: Esther 1:3; 1:14; 1:18; 1:19; 10:2)
plea, plead, beg, implore

Facts:
The terms “plead” and “pleading” refer to urgently asking someone to do something. A “plea” is an urgent request.

- Pleading often implies that the person feels in very great need or strongly desires help.
- People can plead or make an urgent appeal to God for mercy or to ask him to grant something, either for themselves or someone else.
- Other ways to translate this could include “beg” or “implore” or “urgently ask.”
- The term “plea” could also be translated as “urgent request” or “strong urging.”
- Make sure it is clear in the context that this term does not refer to begging for money.

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 08:3-5
- Judges 06:31
- Luke 04:39
- Proverbs 18:17

Word Data:


(Go back to: Esther 4:8; 8:3)
**power, powerful, powerfully**

**Definition:**

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God's ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, Jesus, miracle)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 01:05
- Colossians 01:11-12
- Genesis 31:29
- Jeremiah 18:21
- Jude 01:25
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 01:17
- Luke 04:14
- Matthew 26:64
- Philippians 03:21
- Psalm 080:02

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **22:05** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- **26:01** After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the power of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **32:15** Immediately Jesus realized that power had gone out from him.
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you power when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
- **43:06** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- **44:08** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah.”
Word Data:


(Go back to: Esther 9:29; 10:2)
prostrate, worship

Definition:

To “prostrate” oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to “worship,” referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: sacrifice, praise, honor)

Bible References:

- Colossians 02:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 03:11-12
- Luke 04:07
- Matthew 02:02
- Matthew 02:08

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 13:04 Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
- 14:02 The Canaanites did not worship or obey God. They worshiped false gods and did many evil things.
- 17:06 David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- 18:12 All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel worshiped idols.
- 25:07 Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.”
- 26:02 On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of worship.
- 47:01 There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and worshiped God.
- 49:18 God tells you to pray, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G1391, G1479, G2151, G2318, G2323, G2356, G3000, G3511, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

(Go back to: Esther 3:2; 3:5)
province, provincial

Facts:

A province is a division or part of a nation or empire. The term “provincial” describes something that is related to a province, such as a provincial governor.

- For example, the ancient Persian Empire was divided up into provinces such as Media, Persia, Syria, and Egypt.
- During the time of the New Testament, the Roman Empire was divided up into provinces such as Macedonia, Asia, Syria, Judea, Samaria, Galilee, and Galatia.
- Each province had its own ruling authority, who was subject to the king or ruler of the empire. This ruler was sometimes called a “provincial official” or “provincial governor.”
- The terms “province” and “provincial” could also be translated as “region” and “regional.”

(See also: Asia, Egypt, Esther, Galatia, Galilee, Judea, Macedonia, Medes, Rome, Samaria, Syria)

Bible References:

- Acts 19:30
- Daniel 03:02
- Daniel 06:02
- Ecclesiastes 02:08

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4082, H4083, H5675, H5676, G1885

purple

Facts:

The term “purple” is the name of a color that is a mixture of blue and red.

- In ancient times, purple was a rare and highly valuable color of dye that was used to dye the clothing of kings and other high officials.
- Because it was costly and time-consuming to produce this dye, purple clothing was considered a sign of wealth, distinction, and royalty.
- Purple was also one of the colors used for the curtains in the tabernacle and temple, and for the ephod worn by the priests.
- Purple dye was extracted from a kind of sea snail by either crushing or boiling the snails or by causing them to release the dye while still alive. This was an expensive process.
- Roman soldiers put a purple royal robe on Jesus before his crucifixion, to mock him for his claim to be King of the Jews.
- Lydia from the town of Philippi was a woman who made her living by selling purple cloth.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: ephod, Philippi, royal, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 02:13-14
- Daniel 05:7
- Daniel 05:29-31
- Proverbs 31:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H710, H711, H713, G4209, G4210, G4211

(Go back to: Esther 1:6; 8:15)
queen

Definition:
A queen is either the female ruler of a country or the wife of a king.

- Esther became the queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.
- Queen Jezebel was the evil wife of King Ahab.
- The Queen of Sheba was a famous ruler who came to visit King Solomon.
- A term such as “queen mother” usually referred to the mother or grandmother of a ruling king or the widow of the previous king. A queen mother had much influence; Athaliah, for example, influenced the people to worship idols.

(See also: Ahasuerus, Athaliah, Esther, king, Persia ruler, Sheba)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:10
- 1 Kings 11:18-19
- 2 Kings 10:12-14
- Acts 08:27
- Esther 01:17
- Luke 11:31
- Matthew 12:42

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1404, H1377, H4410, H4427, H4433, H4436, H4446, H7694, H8282, G938

rage

Facts:
The term "rage" refers to intense anger. Often, the term is used to describe an angry person who is out of control in some way.

- When used as a verb, the term "rage" can mean to move powerfully, such as in descriptions of a "raging" storm or ocean waves that "rage."
- To be "filled with rage" means to have an overwhelming feeling of extreme anger.

(See also: self-control)

Bible References:
- Acts 04:25
- Daniel 03:13
- Luke 04:28
- Numbers 25:11
- Proverbs 19:03

Word Data:

(Go back to: Esther 2:1; 3:5; 7:7; 7:10)
reign, rule

Definition:

The term to “reign” means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term “reign” is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king.”

(See also: kingdom)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:11-13
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Luke 01:30-33
- Matthew 02:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, H6113, H7287, H7786, G757, G936, G2231, G4821

(Go back to: Esther 1:1; 1:3; 2:16)
**rest, rested, restless**

**Definition:**

The term “rest” generally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. However, the term can refer to various kinds of rest besides only rest from working. For example, a person might rest from fighting, rest from speaking, or rest from moving, etc.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- A boat that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” or “landed” there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, to “rest (oneself)” could also be translated as to “stop working” or to “refresh himself” or to “stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- God said, “they will not enter my rest,” and this statement could be translated as “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: remnant, Sabbath)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 02:03
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Matthew 11:29
- Revelation 14:11

**Word Data:**


(See also: remnant, Sabbath)
royal, royalty, king's, queen's

Definition:

The term “royal” describes people and things associated with a king or queen.

- Examples of things that could be called “royal” include a king's (or queen's) position, clothing, palace, throne, and crown.
- A king or queen usually lived in a royal palace.
- A king wore special clothing, sometimes called “royal robes.” Often a king's robes were purple, this color could only be produced by a rare and expensive type of dye.
- In the New Testament, believers in Jesus were called a “royal priesthood.” Other ways to translate this could include “priests who serve God the King” or “called to be priests for God the King.”
- The term “royal” could also be translated as “kingly” or “belonging to a king.”

(See also: king, palace, priest, purple, queen, robe)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:13
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- Amos 07:13
- Genesis 49:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H643, H1921, H1935, H4410, H4428, H4430, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H7985, G933, G934, G937

(Go back to: Esther 1:2; 1:7; 1:9; 1:11; 1:19; 2:16; 2:17; 4:14; 5:1; 6:8; 8:10; 8:14; 8:15)
sackcloth

Definition:

Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made from goat hair or camel hair.

- A person who wore clothing made from it would be uncomfortable. Sackcloth was worn to show mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
- The phrase “sackcloth and ashes” was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “coarse cloth from animal hair” or “clothes made of goat hair” or “rough, scratchy clothing.”
- Another way to translate this term could be “rough, scratchy mourning clothes.”
- The phrase “sit in sackcloth and ashes” could be translated as “show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: ash, camel, goat, humble, mourn, repent, sign)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 03:31
- Genesis 37:34
- Joel 01:8-10
- Jonah 03:05
- Matthew 11:21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8242, G4526

(Go back to: Esther 4:1; 4:2; 4:3; 4:4)
scepter

Definition:

The term “scepter” refers to an ornamental rod or staff held by a ruler, such as a king.

- Scepters were originally a branch of wood with carved decorations. Later scepters were also made of precious metals such as gold.
- The scepter was a symbol of royalty and authority and also symbolized the honor and dignity associated with a king.
- In the Old Testament, God was described as having a scepter of righteousness because God rules as king over his people.
- An Old Testament prophecy referred to the Messiah as a symbolic scepter that would come from Israel to rule over all nations.
- This could also be translated as “ruling rod” or “ruler’s rod” or “king’s rod.”

(See also: authority, Christ, king, righteous)

Bible References:

- Amos 01:5
- Esther 04:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Hebrews 01:08
- Numbers 21:18
- Psalms 045:06

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2710, H4294, H7626, H8275, G4464

(For back to: Esther 4:11; 5:2; 8:4)
scribe

Definition:
Scribes were officials who were responsible for writing or copying important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was “expert in Jewish law.”

- Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
- They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
- At times, scribes were important government officials.
- Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
- In the New Testament, the term translated “scribes” was also translated as “teachers of the Law.”
- In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the “Pharisees,” and the two groups were frequently mentioned together.

(See also: law, Pharisee)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:05
- Luke 07:29-30
- Luke 20:47
- Mark 01:22
- Mark 02:16
- Matthew 05:19-20
- Matthew 07:28
- Matthew 12:38
- Matthew 13:52

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5608, H5613, H7083, G1122

(Go back to: Esther 3:12; 8:9)
**seal, sealed, unsealed**

**Definition:**

To term “seal” means to close an object with something (usually called a "seal") that makes the object impossible to open without breaking the seal.

- Often a seal is marked with a design to show who it belongs to.
- Melted wax was used to seal letters or other documents that needed to be protected. When the wax cooled and hardened, the letter could not be opened without breaking the wax seal. The person who received the letter would see the unbroken seal and know that no one had opened it.
- A seal was put on the stone in front of Jesus’ grave in order to keep anyone from moving the stone.
- Paul figuratively refers to the Holy Spirit as a “seal” showing that our salvation is secure.

(See also: Holy Spirit, tomb)

**Bible References:**

- Exodus 02:03
- Isaiah 29:11
- John 06:27
- Matthew 27:66
- Revelation 05:02

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H2368, H2560, H2856, H2857, H2858, H5640, G2696, G4972, G4973

(Go back to: Esther 3:12; 8:8; 8:10)
seed, semen

Definition:
A "seed" is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. However, in the Bible the term "seed" is used figuratively to mean several different things.

- The term "seed" is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these cells is called "semen."
- Related to this, "seed" is also used to refer to a person's offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people's hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term “seed” to refer to the Word of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for “seed” that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God's Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of “seed.” Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren.”
- For a man or woman's “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: euphemism)

(Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 01:11
- Jeremiah 02:21
- Matthew 13:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G4615, G4687, G4690, G4701, G4703

(See also: descendant, offspring)
seek, search, look for

Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is “sought.” This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to “attempt” or “make an effort” to do something or to ask for something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity to do something can mean to “try to find a time” to do it.
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- To “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “urgently ask for favor” or to “do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: just, true)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:06
- Luke 11:09
- Psalms 027:08

Word Data:


(Go back to: Esther 2:2; 2:15; 2:21; 2:23; 3:6; 4:8; 6:2; 7:7; 9:2; 10:3)
servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

**Definition:**

The term “serve” generally means to do work, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts. The term refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. In the Bible, any of the following people might be called a “servant:” a slave, a young female worker, a young male worker, someone who obeys God, and others. In biblical times, there was less of a difference between a “servant” and a “slave” than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of a household, and many servants were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.” When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- In the Bible, the phrase “I am your servant” was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his “servants.”
- To “serve God” can be translated as to “worship and obey God” or to “do the work that God has commanded.”
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”

(See also: commit, enslave, household, lord, obey, righteous, covenant, law.)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 10:7-8
- Colossians 01:7-8
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Mark 09:33-35
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- 2 Timothy 02:3-5
- Acts 06:2-4
- Genesis 25:23
- Luke 04:8

375 / 409
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **08:04** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **09:13** “I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt.”
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, “O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**.”
- **29:03** “Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, ‘Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.’”
- **35:06** “All my father’s **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving.”
- **47:04** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, “These men are servants of the Most High God.”
- **50:04** Jesus also said, “A **servant** is not greater than his master.”

Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong’s: H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G1249, G1401, G1402, G2324, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3816, G4983, G5257

(Go back to: Esther 2:2; 2:9; 2:18; 3:2; 3:3; 4:4; 4:11; 6:3; 6:5)
silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph’s brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 02:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 03:06
- Matthew 26:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3701, H3702, H7192, G693, G694, G695, G696, G1406

(Go back to: Esther 1:6; 3:9; 3:11; 4:7)
slaughter, slaughtered

Definition:
The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called “slaughter.”

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression “the slaughter was very great” could be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: angel, cow, disobey, Ezekiel, servant, slay)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Hebrews 07:01
- Isaiah 34:02
- Jeremiah 25:34

Word Data:


(Go back to: Esther 3:13; 7:4; 8:11; 9:5; 9:6; 9:10; 9:12)
**son**

**Definition:**

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- In the Bible, the phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person’s father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: Azariah, descendant, ancestor, firstborn, Son of God, sons of God)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:02
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- Galatians 04:07
- Hosea 11:01
- Isaiah 09:06
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 08:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **04:09** God said, “I will give you a son from your own body.”
- **05:05** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s son.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his son when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only son from me.”
- **09:07** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own son.
- **11:06** God killed every one of the Egyptians’ firstborn sons.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his son Solomon began to rule.
- **26:04** “Is this the son of Joseph?â€”they said.
Word Data:


(Go back to: Esther 2:5; 3:1; 3:10; 5:11; 8:5; 8:10; 9:10; 9:12; 9:13; 9:14; 9:24; 9:25)
soul, self

Definition:
The term "soul" can either refer generally to the non-physical part of a person or refer specifically to a person's awareness of themselves as a person distinct from others.

- In the Bible, the terms "soul" and "spirit" may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- In contrast to the body, the "soul" can be spoken of as the part of a person that "relates to God."
- The word "soul" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, "the soul who sins" means "the person who sins" and "my soul is tired" means "I am tired."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "soul" could also be translated as "inner self" or "inner person."
- In some contexts, "my soul" could be translated as "I" or "me."
- Usually the phrase "the soul" can be translated as "the person" or "he" or "him," depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for the concepts "soul" and "spirit."
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase "dividing soul and spirit" could mean "deeply discerning or exposing the inner person."

(See also: spirit)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:08
- Acts 02:27-28
- Acts 02:41
- Genesis 49:06
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- James 01:21
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Jonah 02:7-8
- Luke 01:47
- Matthew 22:37
- Psalms 019:07
- Revelation 20:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5082, H5315, H5397, G5590

(Go back to: Esther 4:13)
splendor

Definition:
The term “splendor” refers to the extreme beauty and elegance that is often associated with wealth and a magnificent appearance.

- Often splendor is used to describe the wealth that a king has, or how he looks in his expensive, beautiful finery.
- The word “splendor” can also be used to describe the beauty of trees, mountains, and other things that God has created.
- Certain cities are said to have splendor because of their natural resources, elaborate buildings and roads, and the wealth of their people, which includes rich clothing, gold, and silver.
- Depending on the context, this word could be translated as “magnificent beauty” or “amazing majesty” or “kingly greatness.”

(See also: glory, king, majesty)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:27
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Ezekiel 28:07
- Luke 04:07
- Psalms 089:44-45
- Revelation 21:26-27

Word Data:


(Go back to: Esther 1:4)
**stronghold, fortifications, fortress, citadel**

**Definition:**

The terms “stronghold” and “fortress” both refer to places that are well protected against an attack by enemy soldiers. A “citadel” is a fortress inside a city. The term “fortified” describes a city or other place that has been made safe from attack.

- Often, strongholds and fortresses were manmade structures with defensive walls. They could also have been places with natural protective barriers such as rocky cliffs or high mountains.
- People fortified strongholds by building thick walls or other structures that made it difficult for an enemy to break through.
- “Stronghold” or “fortress” could be translated as “securely strong place” or “strongly protected place.”
- The term “fortified city” could be translated as “securely protected city” or “strongly built city.”
- This term was also used figuratively to refer to God as a stronghold or fortress for those who trust in him. (See: Metaphor)
- Another figurative meaning for the term “stronghold” referred to something that someone wrongly trusted in for security, such as a false god or other thing that was worshiped instead of Yahweh. This could be translated as “false strongholds.”
- This term should be translated differently from “refuge,” which emphasizes safety more than the concept of being fortified.

(See also: false god, false god, refuge, Yahweh)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Corinthians 10:04
- 2 Kings 08:10-12
- 2 Samuel 05:8-10
- Acts 21:35
- Habakkuk 01:10-11

**Word Data:**


(Go back to: Esther 1:2; 1:5; 2:3; 2:5; 2:8; 3:15; 8:14; 9:6; 9:11; 9:12)
sword, swordsmen

Definition:
A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: Metaphor)
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), tongue, word of God)

Bible References:
- Acts 12:02
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 01:16

Word Data:
- Strong's: H19, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), tongue, word of God)

Bible References:
- Acts 12:02
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 01:16

Word Data:
- Strong's: H19, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), tongue, word of God)
threshold, doorway

Definition:
The term "threshold" refers to the bottom part of a doorway or the part of a building that is just inside the door.

- Sometimes a threshold is a strip of wood or stone that must be stepped over in order to enter a room or building.
- Both a gate and the opening to a tent can also have a threshold.
- This term should be translated with a term in the project language that refers to the place at the very entrance to a home that a person steps across.
- If there is no term for this, "threshold" could also be translated as "doorway" or "opening" or "entranceway," depending on the context.

(See also: gate, tent)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:17-19
- Ezekiel 09:03
- Isaiah 06:04
- Proverbs 17:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4670, H5592

(Go back to: Esther 2:21; 6:2)
**throne, enthroned**

**Definition:**

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
- The word “throne” can also be used to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power.
- In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God's throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: authority, power, king, reign)

**Bible References:**

- Colossians 01:15-17
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 01:32
- Luke 22:30
- Matthew 05:34
- Matthew 19:28
- Revelation 01:4-6

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H3427, H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G968, G2362

*(Go back to: Esther 1:2; 5:1)*
time, untimely, date

Facts:

In the Bible the term “time” was often used figuratively to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events took place. It has a meaning similar to “age” or “epoch” or “season.”

- In both Daniel and Revelation speak of a “time” of great trouble or tribulation that will come upon the earth.
- In the phrase “time, times, and half a time” the term “time” means “year.” This phrase refers to a three-and-a-half-year period of time during the great tribulation at the end of this present age.
- “Time” can mean “occasion” in a phrase like “third time.” The phrase “many times” can mean “on many occasions.”
- To be “on time” means to arrive when expected, not late.
- Depending on the context, the term “time” could be translated as, “season” or “time period” or “moment” or “event” or “occurrence.”
- The phrase “times and seasons” is a figurative expression which states the same idea twice. This could also be translated as “certain events happening in certain time periods.” (See: doublt)

(See also: age, tribulation)

Bible References:

- Acts 01:07
- Daniel 12:1-2
- Mark 11:11
- Matthew 08:29
- Psalms 068:28-29
- Revelation 14:15

Word Data:


(Go back to: Esther 1:13)
tongue, language

Definition:
The term "tongue" refers to the organ inside a person's mouth that is used to speak. The term is often used figuratively to mean "language" or "speaking." There are also several other figurative meanings as well.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is "language" or "speech."
- Sometimes "tongue" may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the "gifts of the Spirit."
- In the book of Acts, the expression "tongues" of fire refers to "flames" of fire, presumably shaped like tongues.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "tongue" can be translated as "language" or "supernatural language." If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is best to translate it as "language."
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as "flames."
- The expression "my tongue rejoices" could be translated as "I rejoice and praise God" or "I am joyfully praising God."
- The phrase, "tongue that lies" could be translated as "person who tell lies" or "people who lie."
- Phrases such as "with their tongues" could be translated as "with what they say" or "by their words."

(See also: gift, Holy Spirit, joy, praise, rejoice, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- 1 John 03:18
- 2 Samuel 23:02
- Acts 02:26
- Ezekiel 36:03
- Philippians 02:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3956, G1100, G1258, G2084

(Go back to: Esther 1:22; 3:12; 8:9)
tremble, stagger

Definition:

The term “tremble” means to quiver or to shake slightly and repeatedly, usually from fear or distress. The term can also be used figuratively, meaning “to be very afraid.”

- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to “tremble.” It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as “be afraid” or “fear God” or “shake,” depending on the context.

(See also: earth, fear, Lord)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 07:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 05:22
- Luke 08:47

Word Data:


(Go back to: Esther 5:9)
**trespass**

**Definition:**

The term “trespass” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. This term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a law or to violate the rights of another person.

- This term is very similar to the word "transgression," but is generally used more often to describe violations against other people than against God.
- A trespass can be a violation of a moral law or a civil law.
- A trespass can also be a sin committed against another person.
- This term is related to the terms “sin” and “transgress,” especially as it relates to disobeying God. All sins are trespasses against God.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, to "trespass against" could be translated as to "sin against" or to "break the rule."
- Some languages may have an expression like “cross the line” that could be used to translate “trespass.”
- Consider how this term fits with the meaning of the surrounding Bible text and compare it to other terms that have a similar meaning, such as “transgress” and “sin.”

(See also: disobey, iniquity, sin, transgress)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 25:28
- 2 Chronicles 26:16-18
- Colossians 02:13
- Ephesians 02:01
- Ezekiel 15:7-8
- Romans 05:17
- Romans 05:20-21

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H816, H817, H819, H2398, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G264, G3900

(See also: Esther 3:3)
tribute, contribution, fined

Definition:

The term “tribute” refers to a gift from one ruler to another ruler, for the purpose of protection and for good relations between their nations. A tribute can also be a payment that a ruler or government requires from the people, such as a toll or tax.

- In Bible times, traveling kings or rulers sometimes paid a tribute to the king of the region they were traveling through to make sure they would be protected and safe.
- Often the tribute would include things besides money, such as foods, spices, rich clothing, and expensive metals such as gold.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “tribute” could be translated as “official gifts” or “special tax” or “required payment.”

(See also: gold, king, ruler, tax)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 09:22-24
- 2 Kings 17:03
- Luke 23:02

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1093, H4061, H4503, H4530, H4853, H6066, H7862, G5411

(Go back to: Esther 10:1)
true, truth

Definition:

The term “truth” refers to facts, events, and statements that correspond with reality. True facts describe the universe as it really exists. True events are events that actually happened. True statements are statements that are not false according the real world.

- "True" things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- "Truth" means understandings, beliefs, facts, or statements that are true.
- To say that a prophecy "came true" or "will come true" mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- In the Bible the concept of "truth" includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God's truth in the words that he spoke.
- The Bible is truth. It teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: believe, faithful, fulfill, obey, prophet, understand)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 John 02:08
- 3 John 01:08
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 01:06
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 01:18
- James 03:14
- James 05:19
- Jeremiah 04:02
- John 01:9
- John 01:16-18
- John 01:51
- John 03:31-33
- Joshua 07:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Matthew 08:10
- Matthew 12:17
- Psalm 026:1-3
- Revelation 01:19-20
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not true! You will not die."
- **14:06** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **31:08** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "Truly, you are the Son of God."
- **39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the truth about God. Everyone who loves the truth listens to me." Pilate said, "What is truth?"

Word Data:


(Go back to: Esther 9:30)
Vashti

Facts:

In the Old Testament book of Esther, Vashti was the wife of Ahasuerus, king of Persia.

• King Ahasuerus sent Queen Vashti away when she refused to obey his order to come to his dinner party and show off her beauty to his drunken guests.
• As a result, a search went out for a new queen and eventually Esther was chosen to be the king’s new wife.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Ahasuerus, Esther, Persia)

Bible References:

• Esther 01:9-11
• Esther 02:1-2
• Esther 02:17-18

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H2060

virgin, virginity

Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: Euphemism)

(See also: Christ, Isaiah, Jesus, Mary)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15-16
- Luke 01:27
- Luke 01:35
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 25:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 21:09 The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- 22:04 She (Mary) was a virgin and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph.
- 22:05 Mary replied, “How can this be, since I am a virgin?”
- 49:01 An angel told a virgin named Mary that she would give birth to God’s Son. So while she was still a virgin, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1330, H1331, G3932, G3933

(Go back to: Esther 2:2; 2:3; 2:17; 2:19)
**watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out**

**Definition:**

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 05:06
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 08:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

**Word Data:**


(Go back to: Esther 2:21)
wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

• The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
• To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
• In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
• Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
• A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
• If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
• Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: grape, vine, vineyard, winepress)

Bible References:

• 1 Timothy 05:23
• Genesis 09:21
• Genesis 49:12
• John 02:3-5
• John 02:10
• Matthew 09:17
• Matthew 11:18

smashed

Word Data:

• Strong's: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G1098, G3631, G3820, G3943

(Go back to: Esther 1:7; 1:10; 5:6; 7:2; 7:7; 7:8)
**wise men, advisor**

**Definition:**

The term “wise men” simply means people who are wise. In the Bible, however, the term “wise men” often refers to men with unusual knowledge and abilities who served in a king's royal court as advisors to the king or other high officials.

**Old Testament**

- Sometimes the term “wise men” is explained in the text as “prudent men” or “men with understanding.” This refers to men who act wisely and righteously because they obey God.
- The “wise men” who served pharaohs or other kings were often scholars who studied the stars, especially looking for special meanings for the patterns that the stars made in their positions in the sky. Sometimes "wise men" also practiced divination of performed acts of magic, probably by the power of evil spirits.
- Often wise men were expected to explain the meanings of dreams. For example, King Nebuchadnezzar demanded that his wise men describe his dreams and tell him what they meant, but none of them was able to do this, except Daniel who had received this knowledge from God.

**New Testament**

- The group of men who came from eastern regions to worship Jesus were called “magi,” which is often translated as “wise men,” since this probably refers to scholars who served a ruler of an eastern country.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term “wise men” could be translated using the term “wise” or with a phrase such as “gifted men” or “educated men” or some other term that refers to men who have an important job working for a ruler.
- When the term “wise men” simply means people who are wise, the word “wise” should be translated in the same or similar way to how it is translated elsewhere in the Bible.

(See also: Babylon, Daniel, divination, magic, Nebuchadnezzar, ruler, wise)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 27:32-34
- Daniel 02:1-2
- Daniel 02:10-11

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H2445, H2450, H3778, H3779, G4680

*(Go back to: Esther 1:13; 6:13)*
**wrath, fury**

**Definition:**

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. The Bible describes both people and God as experiencing intense anger. When speaking about God's “wrath,” make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage (which might be true of a human person).

- In the Bible, “wrath” often refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.
- The “wrath of God” can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include “intense anger” or “righteous judgment” or “anger.”
- God's wrath is just and holy. When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful human rage.

(See also: judge, sin)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- Luke 03:7
- Matthew 03:23
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 01:18
- Romans 05:09

**Word Data:**


(Go back to: Esther 1:12; 1:18)
wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful

Definition:
To “wrong” someone means to treat that person unjustly and dishonestly.

- The term “mistreat” means to act badly or roughly toward someone, causing physical or emotional harm to that person.
- The term “hurt” is more general and means to “cause someone harm in some way.” It often has the meaning of “physically injure.”
- Depending on the context, these terms could also be translated as “do wrong to” or “treat unjustly” or “cause harm to” or treat in a harmful way” or “injure.”

Bible References:
- Acts 07:26
- Exodus 22:21
- Genesis 16:05
- Luke 06:28
- Matthew 20:13-14
- Psalms 071:13

Word Data:

(Go back to: Esther 1:16)
Contributors

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community
Aaron Fenlason
Abner Bauman
Adam Van Goor
Alan Bird
Alan Borkenhagen
Alfred Van Dellen
Alice Wright
Allen Bair
Allyson Presswood Nance
Amanda Adams
Andrew Belcher
Andrew Johnson
Andrew Rice
Angelo Palo
Anita Moreau
April Linton
Aurora Lee
Barbara Summers
Barbara White
Becky Hancock
Beryl Carpenter
Bethany Fenlason
Betty Forbes
Bianca Elliott
Bill Cleveland
Bill Pruett
Bob Britting
Bram van den Heuvel
Brian Metzger
Bruce Bridges
Bruce Collier
Bruce Smith
Caleb Worgess
Carlyle Kilmore
Carol Pace
Carol Heim
Caroline Crawford
Caroline Fleming
Caroline S Wong
Carol Lee
Carol Moyer
Carolyn Lafferty
Catherine C Newton
Charese Jackson
Charlotte Gibson
Charlotte Hobbs
Cheryl A Chojnacki
Cheryl Stieben
Cheryl Warren
Christian Berry
Christine Harrison
Clairmene Pascal
Connie Bryan
Connie Goss
Craig Balden
Craig Lins
Craig Scott
Cynthia J Puckett
Dale Hahs
Dale Masser
Daniel Lauk
Daniel Summers
Darlene M Hopkins
Darlene Silas
David Boerschlein
David F Withee
David Glover
David J Forbes
David Mullen
David N Hanley
David Sandlin
David Shortess
David Smith
David Whisler
Debbie Nispel
Debbie Piper
Deborah Bartow
Deborah Bush
Deborah Miniard
Dennis Jackson
Dianne Forrest
Donna Borkenhagen
Donna Mullis
Douglas Hayes
Drew Curley
Ed Davis
Edgar Navera
Edward Kosky
Edward Quigley
Elaine VanRegenmorter
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas
Ellen Lee
Emeline Thermidor
Emily Lee
Esther Roman
Esther Trew
Esther Zirk
Ethel Lynn Baker
Evangeline Puen
Evelyn Wildgust
Fletcher Coleman
Freda Dibble
Gail Spell
Gary Greer
Gary Shogren
Gay Ellen Stulp
Gene Gossman
George Arlyn Briggs
Gerald L. Naughton
Glen Tal lent
Grace Balwit
Grace Bird
Greg Stoffregen
Gretchen Stencil
Hallie Miller
Harry Harriss
Heather Hicks
Helen Morse
Hendrik deVries
Henry Bult
Henry Whitney
Hilary O'Sullivan
Ibrahim Audu
Ines Gipson
Irene J Dodson
Jacqueline Jones
Jacqueline Bartley
James Giddens
James Pedersen
James Pohlig
James Roe
Janet O'Herron
Janice Connor
Jaqueline Rotruck
Jeanette Friesen
Jeff Graf
Jeff Kennedy
Jeff Martin
Jennifer Cunneen
Jenny Thomas
Jerry Lund
Jessica Lauk
Jim Frederick
Jim Lee
Jimmy Warren
Jim Rotruck
Jim Swartzentru ber
Jody Garcia
Joe Chater
Joel Bryan
Joey Howell
John Anderson
John Geddis
John D Rogers
John Hutchins
John Luton

403 / 409
Suzanne Richards
Sylvia Thomas
Sze Suze Lau
Tabitha Price
Tammy L Enns
Tammy White
Teresa Everett-Leone
Teresa Linn
Terri Collins
Theresa Baker
Thomas Jopling
Thomas Nickell
Thomas Warren
Tim Coleman
Tim Ingram
Tim Linn
Tim Lovestrand
Tim Mentink
Tom Penry
Tom William Warren
Toni Shuma
Tracie Pogue
Tricia Coffman
Vicki Ivester
Victoria G DeKraeker
Victor M Prieto
Vivian Kamph
Vivian Richardson
Ward Pyles
Warren Blaisdell
Wayne Homer
Wendy Coleman
Wendy Colon
Wilbur Zirk
Wil Gipson
William Carson
William Cline
William Dickerson
William Smitherman
William Wilder
Yvonne Tallent

**unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors**

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M. Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M.Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
David Trombold
Dean Ropp
Gene Mullen
James Vigen
Leonard Smith
Nicholas Alsop
Michael Francis
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics
Bev Staley
Carol Brinneman
Jody Garcia
Kara Anderson
Kim Puterbaugh
Lizz Carlton
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors

Andrew Belcher
David Book
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Lizz Carlton
Jan Zanutto
Matthew Latham
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Richard Joki
Door43 World Missions Community